

# **Integrated Virtualization Manager** for IBM Power Systems Servers



ibm.com/redbooks



International Technical Support Organization

# Integrated Virtualization Manager for IBM Power Systems Servers

December 2012

**Note:** Before using this information and the product it supports, read the information in "Notices" on page vii.

#### Third Edition (December 2012)

This edition applies to IBM Virtual I/O Server Version 2.2.1.4 that is part of every PowerVM edition on IBM Power Systems and BladeCenters. The firmware level that is used is AL730\_087 for the IBM POWER7 technology-based server and EL350\_132 for the IBM POWER6 technology-based server.

This document was created or updated on March 17, 2016.

#### © Copyright International Business Machines Corporation 2012. All rights reserved.

Note to U.S. Government Users Restricted Rights -- Use, duplication or disclosure restricted by GSA ADP Schedule Contract with IBM Corp.

# Contents

Notices	. vii viii
Preface	. ix
The team who wrote this paper	. ix
Now you can become a published author, too!	. xi
Comments welcome	. xi
Stay connected to IBM Redbooks	. xi
Summary of changes	xiii
December 2012, Third Edition	xiii
Chapter 1. Overview	. 1
1.1 Hardware management.	. 2
1.1.1 Integrated Virtualization Manager (IVM)	. 2
1.1.2 Hardware Management Console	. 4
1.1.3 Advanced System Management Interface (ASMI)	. 6
1.2 Integrated Virtualization Manager design	. 7
1.2.1 Architecture	. 8
1.2.2 Logical partition (LPAR) configuration	. 9
1.3 Advanced PowerVM options	16
1.3.1 Active Memory Sharing	16
1.3.2 Live Partition Mobility	16
1.3.3 N_Port ID Virtualization (NPIV)	16
1.3.4 Shared Storage Pools.	17
Chapter 2 Plan	19
2.1 Considerations for partition setup	20
2.2 Reset to Manufacturing Default Configuration	21
2.3 Microcode update	23
2.4 Advanced System Management Interface IP address setup	26
2.4.1 Address setting using the ASMI	27
2.4.2 Address setting using serial ports	28
2.5 Virtualization feature activation	29
2.6 Accessing the server using AMM in a blade environment	36
2.7 Accessing the server by using serial link	37
Chapter 3. Install	41
3.1 Virtual I/O Server image installation	42
3.1.1 Virtual I/O Server image installation from the NIM server	44
3.2 Initial configuration	44
3.2.1 Set the date and time	44
3.2.2 Initial network setup	44
3.2.3 Changing the TCP/IP settings on the Virtual I/O Server	45
3.3 Virtual I/O Server partition configuration	46
3.4 Network management	47
3.5 Virtual Storage management	48
Chapter 4. Set up	49

4.1 Configure and manage partitions	50
	50
	50
4.2.2 Guideu Selup	52
	52
4.3 Active Memory Sharing	01
4.3.1 Creating the AMS pool	62
4.3.2 Changing the AMS pool configuration	68
	69
4.3.4 Adding or removing specific paging devices to shared memory pool	/1
	79
4.4.1 Create an LPAR based on an existing partition	89
4.4.2 Shutting down logical partitions	91
4.4.3 Monitoring tasks	92
4.4.4 Hyperlinks for object properties	94
4.5 IVM command-line interface	95
4.5.1 Update the profile of the logical partition.	95
4.5.2 Power on a logical partition	96
4.5.3 Console Terminal for IVM logical partition	96
4.5.4 Install an operating system on a logical partition	98
4.6 Optical device sharing	99
4.7 Logical partition configuration changes	. 101
4.7.1 Dynamic LPAR operations on an IVM partition	. 101
4.7.2 LPAR resources management	. 106
4.7.3 Adding a client LPAR to the partition workload group	. 115
4.8 Live Partition Mobility	. 117
4.9 Network management	. 123
4.9.1 Ethernet bridging	. 125
4.9.2 Ethernet link aggregation	. 127
4.9.3 Host Ethernet Adapter in IVM	. 129
4.10 Storage management	. 133
4.10.1 Virtual storage assignment to a partition.	. 133
4.10.2 Virtual disk extension	. 134
4.10.3 IVM system disk mirroring	. 135
4.11 N_Port Identifier Virtualization (NPIV)	. 138
4.11.1 Adding a new virtual Fibre Channel adapter	. 138
4.11.2 Removing a virtual Fibre Channel adapter	. 141
4.11.3 Changing the physical port of an existing virtual Fibre Channel	. 143
4.12 Securing the Virtual I/O Server	. 144
4.13 Connecting to the Virtual I/O Server using OpenSSH	. 147
	. 151
5.1 IVM maintenance	. 152
5.1.1 Backup and restore of the logical partition definitions.	. 152
5.1.2 Backup and restore of the IVM operating system	. 155
5.1.3 Backup and restore of the particular set of files in /nome/padmin	. 156
5.1.4 Virtual I/O Server configuration backup/restore	. 156
	. 162
	. 168
5.1.7 Hecovery after an improper HMC connection	. 169
	. 170
5.1.9 Migration from an HMC to an IVM environment	. 174
5.1.10 Inigration from an IVM environment to an HMC	. 180

5.2 System maintenance
5.2.1 Microcode update
5.2.2 Capacity on demand operations
5.2.3 Logical partition maintenance
5.2.4 Backup of the operating system
5.2.5 Restoration of the operating system
5.3 Command logs
5.4 Integration with IBM Director
5.5 User Accounts
5.6 IBM Electronic Service Agent
5.7 Service Focal Point
5.7.1 Manage serviceable events
5.7.2 Service utilities
5.8 Application logs
5.9 Monitoring tasks
5.10 Hardware inventory 206
Appendix A. IVM and HMC feature summary 207
Annondiu P. Custom requirements
Related publications
IBM Redbooks related to PowerVM
IBM Redbooks related to hardware 213
Online resources
How to get IBM Redbooks
Help from IBM

# Notices

This information was developed for products and services offered in the U.S.A.

IBM may not offer the products, services, or features discussed in this document in other countries. Consult your local IBM representative for information on the products and services currently available in your area. Any reference to an IBM product, program, or service is not intended to state or imply that only that IBM product, program, or service may be used. Any functionally equivalent product, program, or service that does not infringe any IBM intellectual property right may be used instead. However, it is the user's responsibility to evaluate and verify the operation of any non-IBM product, program, or service.

IBM may have patents or pending patent applications covering subject matter described in this document. The furnishing of this document does not grant you any license to these patents. You can send license inquiries, in writing, to:

IBM Director of Licensing, IBM Corporation, North Castle Drive, Armonk, NY 10504-1785 U.S.A.

The following paragraph does not apply to the United Kingdom or any other country where such provisions are inconsistent with local law: INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS MACHINES CORPORATION PROVIDES THIS PUBLICATION "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. Some states do not allow disclaimer of express or implied warranties in certain transactions, therefore, this statement may not apply to you.

This information could include technical inaccuracies or typographical errors. Changes are periodically made to the information herein; these changes will be incorporated in new editions of the publication. IBM may make improvements and/or changes in the product(s) and/or the program(s) described in this publication at any time without notice.

Any references in this information to non-IBM websites are provided for convenience only and do not in any manner serve as an endorsement of those websites. The materials at those websites are not part of the materials for this IBM product and use of those websites is at your own risk.

IBM may use or distribute any of the information you supply in any way it believes appropriate without incurring any obligation to you.

Any performance data contained herein was determined in a controlled environment. Therefore, the results obtained in other operating environments may vary significantly. Some measurements may have been made on development-level systems and there is no guarantee that these measurements will be the same on generally available systems. Furthermore, some measurements may have been estimated through extrapolation. Actual results may vary. Users of this document should verify the applicable data for their specific environment.

Information concerning non-IBM products was obtained from the suppliers of those products, their published announcements or other publicly available sources. IBM has not tested those products and cannot confirm the accuracy of performance, compatibility or any other claims related to non-IBM products. Questions on the capabilities of non-IBM products should be addressed to the suppliers of those products.

This information contains examples of data and reports used in daily business operations. To illustrate them as completely as possible, the examples include the names of individuals, companies, brands, and products. All of these names are fictitious and any similarity to the names and addresses used by an actual business enterprise is entirely coincidental.

#### COPYRIGHT LICENSE:

This information contains sample application programs in source language, which illustrate programming techniques on various operating platforms. You may copy, modify, and distribute these sample programs in any form without payment to IBM, for the purposes of developing, using, marketing or distributing application programs conforming to the application programming interface for the operating platform for which the sample programs are written. These examples have not been thoroughly tested under all conditions. IBM, therefore, cannot guarantee or imply reliability, serviceability, or function of these programs.

# **Trademarks**

IBM, the IBM logo, and ibm.com are trademarks or registered trademarks of International Business Machines Corporation in the United States, other countries, or both. These and other IBM trademarked terms are marked on their first occurrence in this information with the appropriate symbol (® or <sup>™</sup>), indicating US registered or common law trademarks owned by IBM at the time this information was published. Such trademarks may also be registered or common law trademarks in other countries. A current list of IBM trademarks is available on the Web at http://www.ibm.com/legal/copytrade.shtml

The following terms are trademarks of the International Business Machines Corporation in the United States, other countries, or both:

Active Memory <sup>™</sup>	Global Technology Services®
AIX 5L™	IBM®
AIX®	Micro-Partitioning®
BladeCenter®	POWER Hypervisor™
developerWorks®	Power Systems <sup>™</sup>
Electronic Service Agent™	POWER6®
Enterprise Workload Manager™	POWER7 Systems™
Focal Point™	POWER7®

The following terms are trademarks of other companies:

Linux is a trademark of Linus Torvalds in the United States, other countries, or both.

Microsoft, and the Windows logo are trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States, other countries, or both.

Java, and all Java-based trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Oracle and/or its affiliates.

UNIX is a registered trademark of The Open Group in the United States and other countries.

Other company, product, or service names may be trademarks or service marks of others.

# Preface

The *Virtual I/O Server (VIOS)* is part of the IBM PowerVM® feature on IBM® Power Systems<sup>™</sup> and part of the IBM POWER® Hypervisor<sup>™</sup>. The VIOS is also supported on IBM BladeCenter®. The server is a single-function appliance that is in the *logical partition (LPAR)* of the Power Systems server. The VIOS facilitates the sharing of physical I/O resources between client partitions (IBM AIX®, IBM i, and Linux) within the server.

The Virtual I/O Server provides a virtual SCSI target, N\_Port ID Virtualization (NPIV) target, and Shared Ethernet Adapter (SEA) virtual I/O function to client LPARs.

The Virtual I/O Server has the capability of a hardware management function, the *Integrated Virtualization Manager (IVM)*. IVM is a simplified hardware management solution that inherits most of the *Hardware Management Console (HMC)* features. The console manages a single server, avoiding the need of a dedicated personal computer. This device is designed to provide a solution that enables the administrator to reduce system setup time and to make hardware management easier, at a lower cost.

IVM provides a management model for a single system. Although it does not offer all of the HMC capabilities, it enables the exploitation of PowerVM technology. IVM targets the small and medium systems that are best suited for this product.

IVM provides the following functions:

- Shared Storage Pool
- ► IBM Active Memory<sup>TM</sup> Sharing (AMS)
- Live Partition Mobility (LPM)
- Task manager monitor for long-running tasks
- Security additions such as viosecure and firewall, and other improvements

There are many environments where there is the need for small partitioned systems, either for test reasons or for specific requirements, for which the HMC solution is not ideal. A sample situation is where there are small partitioned systems that cannot share a common HMC because they are in multiple locations. In these cases, IVM works.

Using IVM, companies can more cost-effectively consolidate multiple partitions onto a single server. With its intuitive, browser-based interface, the IVM is easy to use and significantly reduces the time and effort that is required to manage virtual devices and partitions.

This IBM Redpaper<sup>™</sup> publication provides an introduction to IVM by describing its architecture and showing how to install and configure a partitioned server by using its capabilities. This document is intended for IT personnel who have a complete understanding of partitioning before reading this document.

### The team who wrote this paper

This paper was produced by a team of specialists from around the world working at the IBM International Technical Support Organization (ITSO), Poughkeepsie Center.

**Marina Rodriguez Batalha** is a Client Technical Specialist (Field Technical Sales Specialist role) in IBM Brazil. She has six years of experience in IBM Power Systems servers. She holds a Technology degree in Data Processing from Centro Paula Souza (FATEC - Faculdade de Tecnologia). Her areas of expertise include operating systems such as IBM AIX, IBM i, Linux, and IBM PowerVM Virtualization implementation and administration.

**Raghavendra K Prasannakumar** is a Staff Software Engineer in IBM India. He has five years of experience in system testing domain since joining IBM. He holds a Bachelor's degree in Electronics and Communication Engineering from Visvesvaraya Technological University (VTU). His areas of expertise include system testing on IBM PowerVM, IBM AIX, Hardware Management Console, and storage area network (SAN). He wrote an IBM developerWorks® article on Live Partition Mobility. He is working as a test lead on the Integrated Software System test team.

Humberto Tadashi Tsubamoto is an IT Specialist in IBM Global Technology Services® in IBM Brazil. He has 13 years experience with UNIX and seven years of experience with storage systems. Humberto has worked at IBM for seven years. He holds a Bachelor's degree in Electrical Engineering from Escola de Engenharia Maua (EEM). His areas of expertise include implementation, support, and performance analysis of IBM Power Systems, IBM PowerVM, IBM AIX, Solaris, SAN, and network-attached storage (NAS).

The project that produced this paper was managed by: Scott Vetter IBM Austin

Thanks to the following people for their contributions to this project:

Richard M Conway, Ann Lund, and Linda Robinson IBM International Technical Support Organization (ITSO)

Neil Palmer dpslink.com

Ivan Berrios and Cesar Diniz Maciel IBM Atlanta

Bob G. Kovacs, Jim Partridge, Jim Parumi, Amartey S. Pearson, and Vani D. Ramagiri IBM Austin

Rodrigo Mello Montagnana and Fernando Vermelho IBM Brazil

Dennis Jurgensen IBM Raleigh

Jaya Srikrishnan IBM Poughkeepsie

Craig Wilcox IBM Rochester

Peter Wuestefeld and Volker Haug IBM Germany

Morten Vagmo IBM Norway Dai Williams and Nigel Griffiths IBM U.K.

Thanks to the authors of the previous editions of this paper:

- Authors of the first edition, Integrated Virtualization Manager for IBM Power Systems Servers, published in October 2005, were:
  - Nicolas Guerin
  - Federico Vagnini
- Author of the second edition, Integrated Virtualization Manager for IBM Power Systems Servers, published in December 2006, was: Guido Somers.

### Now you can become a published author, too!

Here's an opportunity to spotlight your skills, grow your career, and become a published author—all at the same time! Join an ITSO residency project and help write a book in your area of expertise, while honing your experience using leading-edge technologies. Your efforts will help to increase product acceptance and customer satisfaction, as you expand your network of technical contacts and relationships. Residencies run from two to six weeks in length, and you can participate either in person or as a remote resident working from your home base.

Find out more about the residency program, browse the residency index, and apply online at: **ibm.com**/redbooks/residencies.html

### **Comments welcome**

Your comments are important to us!

We want our papers to be as helpful as possible. Send us your comments about this paper or other IBM Redbooks® publications in one of the following ways:

► Use the online **Contact us** review Redbooks form found at:

ibm.com/redbooks

Send your comments in an email to:

redbooks@us.ibm.com

Mail your comments to:

IBM Corporation, International Technical Support Organization Dept. HYTD Mail Station P099 2455 South Road Poughkeepsie, NY 12601-5400

## Stay connected to IBM Redbooks

► Find us on Facebook:

http://www.facebook.com/IBMRedbooks

► Follow us on Twitter:

http://twitter.com/ibmredbooks

► Look for us on LinkedIn:

http://www.linkedin.com/groups?home=&gid=2130806

Explore new Redbooks publications, residencies, and workshops with the IBM Redbooks weekly newsletter:

https://www.redbooks.ibm.com/Redbooks.nsf/subscribe?OpenForm

► Stay current on recent Redbooks publications with RSS Feeds:

http://www.redbooks.ibm.com/rss.html

# **Summary of changes**

The *summary of changes* section describes the technical changes that are made in this edition of the paper and in previous editions. This edition might also include minor corrections and editorial changes that are not identified.

Summary of Changes for Integrated Virtualization Manager for IBM Power Systems Servers as created or updated on March 17, 2016.

# **December 2012, Third Edition**

This edition reflects the addition and modification of information as described in the following sections.

#### **New information**

The following topics highlight new features that were added since the last edition:

- This publication describes the configuration of newer virtualization features, such as N\_Port ID Virtualization (NPIV), Active Memory Sharing (AMS), and Live Partition Mobility (LPM) from Integrated Virtualization Manager (IVM).
- This paper explains how to take backup and restore of the Virtual I/O Server configuration (viosbr).
- ► Use of the call home feature for hardware and software errors, by using IVM.
- Accessing Host Ethernet Adapter (HEA) by using IVM for Virtual I/O Server and VIO client LPAR.
- Accessing the server by using a serial port for IVM installation.

#### **Changed information**

The following topics highlight the major features that changed since the last edition:

- Dynamic Logical Partitioning (DLPAR) facility to physical adapters and HEA in Virtual I/O Server and VIO client LPARs.
- ► Using physical adapters to VIO client LPAR by using IVM.
- Taking backup and restore of important files of /home/padmin by using File and Virtual Media Backup/Restore.
- Revision of the previous content.

1

# **Overview**

This chapter describes several available methods for hardware management and virtualization setup on IBM Power Systems and also introduces the *Integrated Virtualization Manager (IVM)*.

The IVM is a feature of the Virtual I/O Server, which is part of the IBM PowerVM technology. This device enables companies to consolidate multiple partitions onto a single server in a cost-effective way. With its intuitive and browser-based interface, the IVM is easy to use and significantly reduces the time and effort that is required to manage virtual devices and partitions.

### 1.1 Hardware management

With the use of virtualization techniques, hardware management has become more of an independent task. Operating systems have a less direct visibility and control over physical server hardware; therefore, system administrators must now focus on the management of resources that are assigned to them.

To be independent from operating system issues, hardware management requires a separate computing environment that can access, configure, control, monitor, and maintain the server hardware and firmware. This environment requires advanced platform management applications that provide the following functions:

- Server configuration before deployment of operating system
- Service when operating systems are unavailable
- Coordination of platform-related operations across multiple operating system images, within an independent security model
- Presentation of virtual operating system consoles

IBM developed several solutions for hardware management that target different environments which depend on the complexity of hardware setup.

#### 1.1.1 Integrated Virtualization Manager (IVM)

The *Hardware Management Console (HMC)* is the comprehensive solution for hardware management that can be used either for a small configuration or for a multiserver environment. Complexity is kept low by design and many recent software revisions support this. However, the HMC solution might not fit in small and simple environments where only a few servers are deployed or not all HMC functions are required.

There are many environments where there is the need for small partitioned systems, either for test reasons or for specific requirements, for which the HMC solution is not ideal. A sample situation is where there are small partitioned systems that cannot share a common HMC because they are in multiple locations.

*Integrated Virtualization Manager (IVM)* is a simplified hardware management solution that inherits most of the HMC features. It manages a single server, avoiding the need of an independent personal computer. It is designed to provide a solution that enables the administrator to reduce system setup time and to make hardware management easier, at a lower cost.

IVM provides a management model for a single system. Although it does not offer all of the HMC capabilities, it enables the use of IBM PowerVM technology. IVM targets the small and medium systems that are best suited for this product. Table 1-1 lists the systems that are supported at the time of writing.

IBM Power Systems	Supported server models
IBM POWER5 Systems	All server models, except p5-575, p5-590, and p5-595
IBM POWER6® Systems	All server models, except Power 575, Power 590, and Power 595
IBM POWER7® Systems™	All server models, except Power 755, Power 770, Power 775, Power 780, and Power 795

Table 1-1 Supported server models for IVM

IBM Power Systems	Supported server models
IBM BladeCenter	All POWER6 and POWER7 processor-based blades, and IBM BladeCenter JS21

**IVM supported server models:** For more information about IVM supported server models, see this website:

http://pic.dhe.ibm.com/infocenter/powersys/v3r1m5/index.jsp?topic=/p7hch/iphchs
upportedsystems.htm

IVM is an enhancement of the *Virtual I/O Server*, the product that enables I/O virtualization in IBM Power Systems. It enables management of Virtual I/O Server functions and uses a web-based graphical interface that enables the administrator to remotely manage the server with a browser. The HTTPS protocol and server login with password authentication provide the security that is required by many enterprises.

Because one of the goals of IVM is simplification of management, some implicit rules apply to configuration and setup:

- When a system is designated to be managed by IVM, it must not be partitioned.
- The first operating system to be installed *must* be the Virtual I/O Server.

The Virtual I/O Server is automatically configured to own all of the I/O resources. The server can be configured to provide service to other *logical partitions* (*LPARs*) through its virtualization capabilities. However, all other LPARs can have either physical or virtual adapters for disk access, network, and optical devices.

Figure 1-1 shows a sample configuration that uses IVM. In this case, the Virtual I/O Server owns some of the physical adapters. LPAR1 is configured to use a virtual device and physical devices and LPAR2 is configured to use only virtual devices. The virtual devices are provided by the Virtual I/O Server. You can use either physical or virtual devices in the configuration of the LPAR. The administrator can use a browser to connect to the IVM to set up the system configuration.



Figure 1-1 Integrated Virtualization Manager sample configuration

As Figure 1-1 on page 3 depicts, the system hypervisor is modified to enable the Virtual I/O Server to manage the partitioned system without an HMC. The software that is normally running on the HMC is rewritten to fit inside the Virtual I/O Server and to provide a simpler user interface. Because the IVM is running by using system resources, the design is developed to have a minimal affect on disk, memory, and processor resources.

The IVM does not interact with the service processor of the system. A specific device named *Virtual Management Channel* (VMC) was developed on the Virtual I/O Server to enable a direct hypervisor configuration without requiring more network connections. This device is activated, by default, when the Virtual I/O Server is installed as the first partition.

The VMC enables IVM to provide basic logical partitioning functions:

- Logical partitioning configuration
- Boot, start, and stop actions for individual partitions
- Display of partition status
- Management of virtual Ethernet
- Management of virtual storage
- Basic system management

Because IVM runs on an LPAR, there are limited service-based functions, and *Advanced System Management Interface* (*ASMI*) must be used. For example, power on the server by physically pushing the server power-on button or remotely accessing ASMI because IVM does not run while the server power is off. ASMI and IVM together provide a simple but effective solution for a single partitioned server.

LPAR management that uses IVM is through a common web interface that is developed for basic administration tasks. Being integrated within the Virtual I/O Server code, IVM also handles all virtualization tasks that normally require Virtual I/O Server commands to be run.

**IVM interface with HMC:** The IVM provides a unique setup and interface regarding the HMC for managing resources and partition configuration. An HMC expert needs to become familiar with the differences before using the IVM.

IVM has support for dynamic LPAR, starting with Version 1.3.0.0.

IVM and HMC are two unique management systems: The IVM is designed as an integrated solution designed to lower your cost of ownership, and the HMC is designed for flexibility and a comprehensive set of functions. This flexibility provides you the freedom to select the ideal solution for your production workload requirements.

**Moving from IVM to HMC:** The internal design of IVM requires that no HMC is connected to a working IVM system. If a client wants to migrate an environment from IVM to HMC, the configuration setup must be rebuilt manually. This setup includes systems that had previous software levels of Virtual I/O Server running on them because they were also managed by an HMC.

#### 1.1.2 Hardware Management Console

The primary hardware management solution that is developed by IBM relies on an appliance server named the *Hardware Management Console* (*HMC*), packaged as an external tower or rack-mounted personal computer. It is deployed on all Power Systems, each with its own specific set of management tools. Great effort is made to improve their functions and ease of use.

The HMC is a centralized point of hardware control. In a Power Systems environment, a single HMC can manage multiple POWER processor-based systems. Two HMCs can manage the same set of servers in a dual-active configuration that is designed for high availability.

Hardware management is performed by an HMC using a standard Ethernet connection to the service processor of each system. Interacting with the service processor, the HMC can modify the hardware configuration of the managed system, querying for changes, and managing service calls.

A hardware administrator can log in to the physical HMC and use the native graphical user interface (GUI). Or, the administrator can connect remotely to the HMC by using a web browser, which has the same presence of the native GUI.

Because it is a stand-alone personal computer, the HMC does not use any managed system resources and can be maintained without affecting system activity. Restarts and software maintenance on the HMC do not have any affect on the managed systems.

In the unlikely case that the HMC requires manual intervention, the systems continue to be operational and a new HMC can be plugged into the network and configured to download the current configuration from the managed systems. The new HMC becomes operationally identical to the replaced HMC.

The following list highlights the major HMC functions:

- Monitoring of system status
- Management of IBM capacity on demand (CoD)
- Creation of logical partitioning with dedicated processors
- ► Management of LPARs including power on, power off, and console
- Dynamic reconfiguration of partitions
- Management of virtual Ethernet among partitions
- Clustering
- Concurrent firmware updates
- Hot add and remove of I/O drawers

POWER processor-based systems are capable of IBM Micro-Partitioning<sup>®</sup>. The IBM POWER Hypervisor can support multiple LPARs, sharing the processors in the system and enabling I/O sharing. Power Systems servers require a PowerVM Edition feature.

On systems with Micro-Partitioning enabled, the HMC provides more functions:

- Creation of shared processor partitions
- Creation of the Virtual I/O Server partition for physical I/O virtualization
- Creation of virtual devices for Virtual I/O Server and client partitions

The HMC interacts with the hypervisor to create virtual devices among partitions, and the Virtual I/O Server partitions manage physical device sharing. Network, disk, and optical device access can be shared.

Partition configuration can be changed dynamically by issuing commands on the HMC or by using the HMC GUI. The allocation of resources, such as CPU, memory, and I/O, can be modified without making applications aware of the change.

To enable dynamic reconfiguration, an HMC requires TCP/IP communication with every involved LPAR besides the basic connection with the service processor. Using a Resource Monitoring and Control (RMC) protocol, the HMC can securely interact with the operating system to free and acquire resources and to coordinate these actions with hardware configuration changes.

The HMC also provides tools to ease problem determination and service support, such as the *Service Focal Point* feature, call-home, and error log notification through a modem or the Internet.

#### 1.1.3 Advanced System Management Interface (ASMI)

Major hardware management activity is done by interacting with the service processor that is installed on all POWER processor-based systems. The HMC has access to the service processor through Ethernet and uses it to configure the system Hypervisor.

The service processor can be locally accessed through a serial connection by using system ports when the system is powered down. The processor can be remotely accessed in either power standby or powered-on modes. This access can occur by using an HTTPS session with a web browser that points to the IP address that is assigned to the Ethernet ports of the service processor.

The web GUI is called the *Advanced System Management Interface (ASMI*), as shown in Figure 1-2.

Advanced System Management				
Log out User ID: admin	8233-E8B_SN061AA6P AL730_087			
<ul> <li>Expand all menus</li> <li>Power/Restart Control</li> <li>System Service Aids</li> <li>System Information</li> <li>System Configuration</li> <li>Network Services</li> <li>Performance Setup</li> <li>On Demand Utilities</li> <li>Concurrent Maintenance</li> <li>Login Profile</li> </ul>	Welcome Machine type-model: 8233-E8B Serial number: 061AA6P Date: 2012-9-27 Time: 22:29:15 UTC Service Processor: Primary (Location: U78A0.001.DNWHZWR-P1) Current users User ID Location admin 172.16.254.22 User Status User ID Status dev Disabled celogin Enabled celogin Disabled celogin2 Disabled			

Figure 1-2 Advanced System Management Interface

ASMI is the major configuration tool for systems that are not managed by an HMC. The tool provides basic hardware setup features and is useful when the system is a stand-alone system. ASMI can be accessed and used when the HMC is connected to the system, but some of its features are disabled.

Using ASMI, the administrator can run the following basic operations:

- View system information
- Control system power
- Change the system configuration
- Set performance options
- Configure the network services of the service processor
- Use on-demand utilities
- Use concurrent maintenance utilities
- ► Run system service aids, such as accessing the error log of the service processor

The scope of every action is restricted to the same server. If there are multiple systems, the administrator must contact each of them independently, each in turn.

After the initial setup, typical ASMI usage is remote system power-on and power-off. The other functions are related to system configuration changes, for example, virtualization feature activation and troubleshooting, such as access to the logs of the service processor.

The ASMI does not allow LPARs to be managed. To deploy LPARs, a higher level of management is required, going beyond basic hardware configuration setup. This management can be done either with an HMC or by using the IVM.

## 1.2 Integrated Virtualization Manager design

Power Systems can be partitioned because they are all preinstalled with all of the necessary firmware support for a partitioned environment.

Because the partitioning schema is designed by the client, every system is set up by manufacturing in the same *Manufacturing Default Configuration* that can be changed or reset to when required.

Although configured by using the Manufacturing Default Configuration, the system has the following setup from a partitioning point of view:

- There is a single predefined partition.
- ► All hardware resources are assigned to the single partition.
- ► The partition has system *service authority*, so it can update the firmware.
- ► The partition is auto-started at power-on.
- Standard operating system installation methods apply for the partition (network or media-based).
- The physical control panel of the system is mapped to the partition, displaying its operating system messages and error codes.
- Base platform management functions, such as power control, are provided through integrated system control functions (for example, service processor and control panel).

The Manufacturing Default Configuration enables the system to be used immediately as a stand-alone server with all resources allocated to a single LPAR. If an HMC is attached to the service processor of a Power System, the system configuration can be changed to make the hypervisor manage multiple LPARs.

When an HMC is not available and the administrator wants to use virtualization features, the IVM can be used.

#### 1.2.1 Architecture

The IVM was developed to provide a simple environment where a single control program has the ownership of the physical hardware and other LPARs use it to access resources.

The Virtual I/O Server has most of the required features because it can provide virtual disk and virtual networking capability. The current version of the Virtual I/O Server comes with several IVM features. The server includes features such as: dynamic LPAR-capability of the client LPARs, security improvements (firewall, viosecure), usability additions (TCP/IP GUI configuration, hyperlinks, simple LPAR creation, task monitor, to name a few), Active Memory Sharing (AMS), N\_Port ID Virtualization (NPIV), and Live Partition Mobility (LPM).

To set up LPARs, the IVM requires management access to the hypervisor. It has no service processor connection that is used by the HMC and it relies on a new virtual I/O device type called *Virtual Management Channel (VMC*). This device is activated only when the Virtual I/O Server installation detects that the environment must be managed by IVM.

VMC is present on Virtual I/O Server only when the following conditions are true:

- The virtualization feature is enabled.
- The system has not been managed by an HMC.
- ► The system is in Manufacturing Default Configuration.

To fulfill these requirements, an administrator must use the ASMI. By using the ASMI, they can enter the virtualization activation code, reset the system to the Manufacturing Default Configuration, and so on. A system reset removes any previous LPAR configuration and any existing HMC connection configuration.

On a Virtual I/O Server partition with IVM activated, a new ibmvmc0 virtual device is present and a management web server is started. It listens to HTTP port 80 and to HTTPS port 443. The presence of the virtual device can be detected by using the **1sdev** -virtual command, as shown in Example 1-1.

Example 1-1 Virtual Management Channel device

\$ 1sdev	-virtual   grep ib	mvmc0			
ibmvmc0	Available	Virtual	Management	Channel	

Because IVM relies on VMC to set up logical partitioning, it can manage only the system on which it is installed. For each IVM managed system, the administrator must open an independent web browser session.

Figure 1-3 on page 9 provides the schema of the IVM architecture. The primary user interface is a web browser that connects to port 80 of the Virtual I/O Server. The web server provides a simple GUI and runs commands by using the same command-line interface that can be used for logging in to the Virtual I/O Server. One set of commands provides LPAR management through the VMC, and a second set controls for Virtual I/O Server virtualization capabilities. It also enables Secure (encrypted) Shell (SSH) access.





Figure 1-3 IVM high-level design

LPARs in an IVM managed system are isolated exactly as in an HMC managed system and they can talk using virtual and physical devices using normal TCP protocol. IVM is used to perform the following actions on the other LPARs such as:

- Activate and deactivate
- ► Send an emergency power-off warning (EPOW) signal to the operating system
- Create and delete
- View and change configuration
- Dynamic logical partitioning of processor, memory, physical, and virtual I/O
- ► To enable processor and memory sharing
- Migrate a partition to another IVM

### 1.2.2 Logical partition (LPAR) configuration

The simplification of the user interface of a single partitioned system is one of the primary goals of the IVM. LPAR management is designed to enable a quick deployment of partitions. Compared to HMC managed systems, configuration flexibility is reduced to provide a basic usage model. A new user with no HMC skills can easily manage the system in an effective way.

LPAR configuration is made by assigning processor, memory, and virtual I/O by using a web graphical user interface (GUI) wizard. At each step of the process, the administrator is asked simple questions, which provide the range of possible answers. Most of the parameters that are related to LPAR setup are hidden during creation time. This process is done to ease the setup and can be finely tuned, changing partition properties if needed after the initial setup.

Resources that are assigned to an LPAR are immediately allocated and are no longer available to other partitions, regardless of whether the LPAR is activated or powered down.

This behavior makes management more direct and it is a change when compared to HMC managed systems where resource over-commitment is allowed.

It is important to understand that any unused processor resources do become available to other partitions through the shared pool. This process happens when any LPAR is not using all of its processor entitlement.

System configuration is described in the GUI, as shown in Figure 1-4. In this example, an unbalanced system is manually prepared as a specific scenario. The system has 128 GB of global memory, 16 processing units, and four LPARs defined. In the Partition Details panel, the allocated resources are shown in terms of memory and processing units. Even if the LPAR2 and LPAR3 partitions are not activated, their resources are allocated and the available memory and processing units of the system are updated accordingly.

If a new LPAR is created, it cannot use the resources that belong to a powered-off partition. However, the partition can be defined by using the available free resources that are shown in the System Overview panel.

The processing units for the LPAR, named LPAR1 (ID 2), are changed from the default of 0.2, which was created by the wizard, to a processing unit of 0.1. LPAR1 can use up to one processor because it has one virtual processor and is guaranteed to use up to 0.1 processing units. Figure 1-4 depicts this system configuration status.



Figure 1-4 System configuration status

#### Memory

Memory is assigned to an LPAR by using available memory on the system with an allocation unit size that can vary from system to system, depending on its memory configuration. The wizard provides this information, as shown in Figure 1-5.

Name Memory Processors Ethernet Storage Type Storage Virtual Fibre Channel Optical/Tape Physical Adapters	Memory         In dedicated mode, the partition uses assigned memory from total system memory. In shared mode, the partition uses the memory from the system shared memory pool.         You cannot create a partition that uses shared memory because there is no shared memory pool defined for the system. If you want to assign shared memory for the partition, use the <u>View/Modify System Properties;</u> <u>Memory tab</u> to exit the wizard and create a shared memory pool to enable shared memory on the system.         If you want to assign dedicated memory for the partition, specify the amount of memory, in multiples of 64
Summary	Note: If you specify a number that is not a multiple of 64 MB, the wizard will round the number to the nearest multiple of 64 MB.
	Memory Mode
	Dedicated     Shared
	Dedicated Mode Total system memory: 128 GB (131072 MB) Current memory available for partition usage: 107.19 GB (109760 MB) Assigned memory: 512 MB ♥

Figure 1-5 Memory allocation to LPAR

The minimum allocation size of memory is related to the *logical memory block* (LMB) size of the system. The size is defined automatically at the start of the system, depending on the size of physical memory. However, it can be changed by using ASMI on the Performance Setup menu, as shown in Figure 1-6. The default automatic setting can be changed to the following values: 16 MB, 32 MB, 64 MB, 128 MB, or 256 MB.

	Advanced Syst	em Management	Copyright © 2002, 2012 IBM Corporation. All rights reserved.
Log out User ID: ad	min	8233-E8B_SN061AA6P	AL730_087
<ul> <li>Expand all menus</li> <li>Collapse all menus</li> <li>Power/Restart C</li> <li>System Service</li> <li>System Informat</li> <li>System Configu</li> <li>Network Service</li> <li>Performance Se Logical Memory</li> <li>System Memory</li> <li>On Demand Util</li> <li>Concurrent Mair</li> <li>Login Profile</li> </ul>	s Control Aids ion ration es tup Block Size Page Setup ities ttenance	Logical Memory Block Size Setting: 64 MB (7) 16 MB Automa 32 MB 128 MB 128 MB 256 MB Automatic	

Figure 1-6 Logical Memory Block size setup

You can also change the value from IVM View/Modify Shared Memory Pool  $\rightarrow$  Memory  $\rightarrow$  Memory Region Size, as shown in Figure 1-7.

View/Modify System Properties
General Memory Processing
▼ General
Installed system memory: 128 GB (131072 MB)
Configurable system memory: 128 GB (131072 MB)
Current memory available: 107 GB (1019568 MB)
Pendia memory available: 107 GB (109568 MB)
Perserved firmware memory: 15 GB (1536 MB)
Reserved minimate memory. The OD (1999 HD)
Memory Region Size
Memory region size: 256 MB
Memory region size after restart: 256 MB (automatic) 🗸
16 MB
Shared Memory Pool (Not def 32 MB
A shared memory pool defines the 129 MB
to specify properties for the shared 256 MB (automatic) k Apply to create the shared memory pool.
Define Shared Memory Pool
Apply Reset

Figure 1-7 Logical Memory Block size setup from IVM

To change the LMB setting, the entire system must be shut down; you can do this from ASMI. If an existing partition has a memory size that does not fit in the new LMB size, the memory size is changed to the nearest value that can be allowed by the new LMB size. However, the value cannot exceed the original memory size.

A small LMB size provides a better granularity in memory assignment to the partitions, but requires higher memory allocation and deallocation times. This increase is because more operations are required for the same amount of memory. Larger LMB sizes can slightly increase the firmware reserved memory size. It is suggested to keep the default automatic setting.

#### Processors

An LPAR can be defined either with dedicated or with shared processors. The wizard provides available resources in both cases and asks which processor resource type to use.

When shared processors are selected for a partition, the wizard asks only the administrator to choose the number of virtual processors to be activated. The maximum value is equal to the number of system processors. For each virtual processor, 0.1 processing units are implicitly assigned and the LPAR is created in uncapped mode with a weight of 128.

Figure 1-8 explains virtual and real processor allocation to a freshly creating LPAR.

<b>Create Partition: Proce</b>	ssors Step 3	6 of 11
Create Partition: Proce <u>Memory</u> ** Processors Ethernet Storage Type Storage Virtual Fibre Channel Optical/Tape Physical Adapters Summary	Step 3 Processors In shared mode, every assigned virtual processor uses 0.1 physical processors. In dedicated mode, every assigned processor uses 1 physical processor. Specify the desired number of processors and the processing mode.  Processors Total system processors: 16 Assigned processors: 1 Processing Mode Shared - 139 available virtual processors Dedicated - 13 available dedicated processors	of 11
- Back North - Einith	O Dedicated - 13 available dedicated processors	
< Back Next > Finish	Cancel	Help

Figure 1-8 Processor allocation to LPAR

The LPAR configuration can be changed after the wizard finishes creating the partition. The following parameters are available for the partition:

- Processing unit value
- Virtual processor number
- Capped or uncapped property
- Uncapped weight

The default LPAR configuration that is provided by using the partition creation wizard is designed to keep the system balanced. Manual changes to the partition configuration can be made after careful planning of the resource distribution. The configuration that is described in Figure 1-4 on page 10 shows the manually changed processing units.

As a general suggestion, use these guidelines:

- For the LPAR configuration, select the appropriate virtual processors and keep the default processing units when possible.
- Leave some system processing units deallocated. They are available to all LPARs that require them.
- Do not underestimate the processing units that are assigned to the Virtual I/O Server. If the units are not needed, they remain available in the shared pool. However, on system peak utilization periods, the units can be important for the Virtual I/O Server to provide service to highly active partitions.

#### Virtual Ethernet

Every IVM managed system is configured with four predefined virtual Ethernet devices, each with a virtual Ethernet ID ranging 1 - 4. Every LPAR creation wizard by default shows two virtual Ethernet adapters that can be connected to any of the four virtual networks in the system. If needed, you can create more adapters.

Figure 1-9 shows the LPAR creation wizard. By default, adapter 1 is assigned to virtual Ethernet 1 and the second virtual Ethernet is unassigned.

Virtual Ethernet Configuration Create Adapter								
Adapter	Virtual Ethernet							
1	1 - ent12 (U78A0.001.DNWHZWR-P1-C6-T1)	~						
2	None	~						

Figure 1-9 Virtual Ethernet wizard of an LPAR creation

Each virtual Ethernet can be bridged by the Virtual I/O Server to a physical network by using only one physical adapter. If higher performance or redundancy is required, a physical adapter aggregation can be made on one of these bridges instead. The same physical adapter or physical adapter aggregation cannot bridge more than one virtual Ethernet. See 4.9, "Network management" on page 123 for more details.

Figure 1-10 shows a **View/Modify Virtual Ethernet** wizard panel. All four virtual networks are described with the corresponding bridging physical adapter, if configured. An administrator can decide how to configure the two available virtual adapters.

View/Modify Virtua	l Ethernet	2								
Virtual Ethernet Virtual Ethernet Bridge										
A physical network bridge provides a specific virtual Ethernet access to a physical Ethernet device, thereby allowing any partition on the bridged virtual Ethernet to access the external network via the physical Ethernet device. For a given virtual Ethernet, you may choose the physical adapter to which to bridge. If a virtual Ethernet is not bridged, traffic on the virtual Ethernet is restricted to member partitions.										
Virtual Ethernet ID	Physical Adapter									
1	ent12 (U78A0.001.DNWHZWR-P1-C6-T1) 💌									
2	None									
3	None									
4	None									
Apply Reset										

Figure 1-10 Virtual Ethernet allocation to an LPAR

The virtual Ethernet is a bootable device and can be used to install the operating system of the LPAR.

#### Virtual storage

Every LPAR can be equipped with one or more virtual devices by using a single virtual SCSI adapter. A virtual disk device has the following characteristics:

- The size is defined by the administrator.
- It is treated by the operating system as a normal SCSI disk.
- It is bootable.
- It is created by using the physical storage that is owned by the Virtual I/O Server partition. The storage can be either internal or external to the physical system (for example, on the storage area network (SAN)).
- It can be defined either by using an entire physical volume (SCSI disk or a logical unit number of an external storage server) or a portion of a physical volume.

Virtual disk device content is preserved if moved from one LPAR to another or increased in size. Before you make changes in the virtual disk device allocation or size, the owning partition unconfigures the device to prevent data loss.

A virtual disk device that does not require an entire physical volume can be defined by using disk space from a *storage pool*. This pool is created on the Virtual I/O Server, which is a set of physical volumes. Virtual disk devices can be created spanning multiple disks in a storage pool, and they can be extended if needed.

The IVM can manage multiple storage pools and change their configurations by adding or removing physical disks to them. To simplify management, one pool is defined to be the default storage pool and most virtual storage actions implicitly refer to it.

#### Virtual optical devices

Any optical device that is assigned to the Virtual I/O Server partition (either CD-ROM, DVD-ROM, or DVD-RAM) can be virtualized and assigned to any LPAR. This assignment is

done, one at a time, by using the same virtual SCSI adapter that is provided to the virtual disks. Virtual optical devices can be used to install the operating system and, when a DVD-RAM is available, to make backups.

#### Virtual TTY

To allow LPAR installation and management, the IVM provides a virtual terminal environment for LPAR console handling. When a new LPAR is defined, two matching virtual serial adapters are created for console access, one on the LPAR and one on the IVM. This configuration provides a connection from the IVM to the LPAR through the hypervisor. See more details in 4.5.3, "Console Terminal for IVM logical partition" on page 96.

## 1.3 Advanced PowerVM options

Through IVM, it is possible to configure many of the advanced virtualization functions that are available on the IBM Power Systems servers.

In this section, we explore the following topics:

- Active Memory Sharing
- Live Partition Mobility
- N\_Port ID Virtualization (NPIV)
- Shared Storage Pools

In the following sections, different LPAR configurations are shown.

#### 1.3.1 Active Memory Sharing

Active Memory Sharing (AMS) was announced with POWER6 processor-based servers and is available for servers that have the IBM PowerVM Enterprise Edition enabled. This feature helps to create a pool of memory to be shared among LPARs inside the server.

In this publication, we explore how to configure AMS by using the IVM GUI, in section 4.3, "Active Memory Sharing" on page 61.

#### **1.3.2 Live Partition Mobility**

Live Partition Mobility is an IBM PowerVM feature that is used to migrate an LPAR from one Power Systems server to another, if the pre-configuration requirements are met.

This function is available only with the PowerVM Enterprise Edition enabled for POWER6 processor-based and POWER7 processor-based servers.

In this publication, we show how to migrate an LPAR from a POWER6 to a POWER7 processor-based server through the IVM interface. For more information, see 4.8, "Live Partition Mobility" on page 117.

#### **1.3.3 N\_Port ID Virtualization (NPIV)**

*N\_Port ID Virtualization (NPIV)* is a virtualization standard feature. It has been supported since the introduction of the POWER6 processor-based servers with 8 Gb Fibre Channel adapters and the Virtual I/O Server Version 2.1 and later. Inside IVM, NPIV is represented by

a virtual Fibre Channel configuration which allow multiples LPARs to use the same Fibre Channel connection to access external storage.

In this publication, we describe how to configure NPIV, in section 4.11, "N\_Port Identifier Virtualization (NPIV)" on page 138.

#### **1.3.4 Shared Storage Pools**

A *Shared Storage Pool* (*SSP*) is a new feature that is available in IVM from Version 2.2.1.2 and later. With this feature, you can combine multiple Virtual I/O Servers (beginning with Version 2.2.1.4 and later, is possible to configure four nodes) to use the SAN effectively.

With an SSP, you can achieve the following functions:

- ► Thin and thick provisioning
- Snapshot rollback
- One place to manage all types of disk storage devices
- ► Live Storage Mobility

2

# Plan

*Integrated Virtualization Manager (IVM)* is shipped with the Virtual I/O Server media. The interface is activated during the Virtual I/O Server installation only, if all of the following conditions are true:

- ► The system is in the *Manufacturing Default Configuration*.
- The system has never been managed by a *Hardware Management Console (HMC)*.
- The virtualization feature is enabled.

A new system from manufacturing that was ordered with the virtualization feature is ready for the IVM. If the system was ever managed by an HMC, the administrator is required to reset it to the Manufacturing Default Configuration. If virtualization is not activated, the system cannot manage micropartitions. Contact an IBM marketing representative to order the activation code.

If a system supports the IVM, it can be ordered with the IVM preinstalled.

Ensure that you have the following equipment and IP addresses available before you install the IVM:

- A serial American Standard Code for Information Interchange (ASCII) console and cross-over cable (a physical ASCII terminal or a suitable terminal emulator) that is connected to one of the two system ports for initial setup
- An IP address for the IVM
- An optional, but recommended, IP address for the Advanced System Management Interface (ASMI)

This chapter describes the basic considerations, functions to set up in the ASMI, and how to apply the necessary virtualization code and microcodes to use the IVM interface.

# 2.1 Considerations for partition setup

When you use the IVM, it is easy to create and manage a partitioned system because most of the complexity of the logical partition (LPAR) setup is hidden. A new user can quickly learn an effective methodology to manage the system. However, it is important to understand how configurations are applied and can be changed.

The Virtual I/O Server is the only LPAR that can accomplish management interaction with the hypervisor and is able to react to hardware configuration changes. The configuration of the Virtual I/O Server can be changed dynamically while it is running. The other LPARs do not have access to the hypervisor and have no interaction with the IVM to be aware of possible system changes.

It is possible to change any resource allocation for the client LPARs through the IVM web interface. This action enables the user to change the processing unit configuration, memory allocation, and physical and virtual adapter setup while the LPAR is activated. This is possible through the Dynamic LPAR Manager (with a Resource Monitoring and Control (RMC) daemon). *Dynamic LPAR Manager* is a daemon that runs in an LPAR. The POWER Hypervisor communicates to the LPAR by using this daemon.

The IVM command-line interface (CLI) enables an experienced administrator to make modifications to a partition configuration. Changes that use the command line are shown in the web graphical user interface (GUI). A warning message is displayed to highlight that the resources of an affected LPAR are not yet synchronized.

Figure 2-1 shows a case where the memory was changed manually on the command line. To detect the actual values, the administrator must select the partition on the GUI and select **Properties** from the **More Tasks** drop-down menu or by just clicking the hyperlink for more details about the synchronization of the current and pending values.

Integrated Virtualization Manager												
Welcome padmin : vios1 Edit my profile   Help   Log ou												
Partition Management	View/№	lodify	Partitions							?		
<u>View/Modify Partitions</u> <u>View/Modify System Properties</u> <u>View/Modify Shared Memory Pool</u> To perform an action on a partition, first select the partition or partitions, and then select the task.     System Overview												
I/O Adapter Management	Total system memory: 128 GB Total processing units: 16											
View/Modify Host Ethernet Adapters     View/Modify Virtual Ethernet     View/Modify Physical Adapters     View Virtual Fibre Channel	Memory available:       23.25 GB       Processing units available:       14.1         Reserved firmware memory:       5.75 GB       Processor pool utilization:       0.10 (r         Available shared memory pool size:       64.53 GB       System attention LFD:       Inactive							(0.6%)				
Virtual Storage Management	Partiti	on Det	aile		-							
<u>View/Modify Virtual Storage</u>												
IVM Management		🖻 🖻 😼 🛛 * Create Partition Active		Activate	Shutdown More Tasks			*				
<u>View/Modify User Accounts</u> <u>View/Modify TCP/IP Settings</u> <u>Guided Setup</u>	Select	<u>ID</u> ^	<u>Name</u>	<u>State</u>	<u>Uptime</u>	<u>Memory</u>	Processors	Entitled Processing Units	Utilized Processing Units	Reference Code		
Enter PowerVM Edition Key Service Management		1	<u>vios1</u>	Running	2.04 Days	20 GB	13	1.3	0.09			
Electronic Service Agent     Service Focal Point		2	lpar1 server1	Running	55.6 Minutes	4 GB	2	0.3	0.01			
Manage Serviceable Events     Service Utilities		3	lpar2 server1	Not Activated		60 GB	1	0.1		<u>00000000</u>		
<u>Create Serviceable Event</u> <u>Manage Dumps</u> <u>Collect VPD Information</u> Updates		4	lpar3 server1	Running	1.98 Hours	10 GB	2	0.2	0.01			
Backup/Restore     Application Logs     Monitor Tasks     Hardware Inventory												

Figure 2-1 Manual LPAR configuration
Figure 2-2 shows a generic LPAR schema from an I/O point of view. Every LPAR is created with one virtual serial and one virtual SCSI connection. There are four predefined virtual networks. The Virtual I/O Server already is equipped with one virtual adapter that is connected to each of them.



Figure 2-2 General I/O schema on an IVM managed system

There is only one virtual SCSI adapter for each LPAR. Therefore, the web GUI hides its presence and shows virtual disks and optical devices as assigned directly to the partition. When the CLI is used, the virtual SCSI adapter must be taken into account.

For a virtual Ethernet adapter configuration, the administrator needs to define only whether to create one or two virtual Ethernet adapters on each LPAR and on the virtual network to which it must be connected.

All remaining I/O configurations are done dynamically:

- ► An optical device can be assigned to any virtual SCSI channel.
- A virtual disk device can be created, deleted, or assigned to any virtual SCSI channel.
- ► A virtual Fibre Channel adapter can be created, deleted, or assigned to any LPAR.
- ► A physical adapter can be assigned to any LPAR.
- Ethernet bridging between a virtual network and a physical adapter can be created, deleted, or changed at any time.

# 2.2 Reset to Manufacturing Default Configuration

This operation is needed only if the system was previously managed by the HMC. It resets the system, removing all partition configurations and any personalization that was made to the service processor.

The following steps describe how to reset the system:

- 1. Power off the system.
- 2. Connect a serial ASCII console to a system port by using a null-modem (cross-over) cable. The following configuration is for the port settings:
  - 19,200 bits per second
  - Eight data bits
  - No parity
  - One stop bit
  - Xon/Xoff flow control
- 3. Press any key on the serial connection of the TTY to receive the service processor prompt.
- 4. Log in as the user admin and answer the questions about the number of lines and columns for the output. The default password is admin.
- 5. Type 2 to enter the System Service Aids menu and type 11 to select the Factory Configuration option. Type 1 to select Reset all settings from the Factory Configuration menu. A warning message similar to what is shown in Example 2-1 describes the effect of the reset and asks for confirmation. Type 1 and hit Enter to confirm.

#### Example 2-1 Factory configuration reset

Continuing will result in the loss of system settings that you may have set via user interfaces. Before continuing with this operation make sure you have manually recorded all settings that need to be preserved. This option will reset service processor settings such as the HMC access, ASMI passwords, time of day, network configuration, hardware deconfiguration policies, platform error logs, etc. This option will reset the PCI bus configuration. It will also clear the firmware settings and all the partition information. To complete this operation, the system will be powered on and then off. Follow the instructions in the system service publications to configure the network interfaces after the reset. Enter 1 to confirm or 2 to cancel: 1

Powering on the system server firmware and rebooting the service processor. Attention: This operation may take some time, please be patient.

**Factory configuration reset:** After a factory configuration reset, the system activates the microcode version that is present in the permanent firmware image. Check the firmware levels in the permanent and temporary images before you reset the system.

**Migration between HMC and IWM:** More information about migration between the HMC and IVM can be found in section 5.1.6, "The migration between HMC and IVM" on page 168.

# 2.3 Microcode update

When you install the IVM, we suggest installing the latest available microcode. If the update is not needed, skip this section.

The active microcode level is provided by the service processor. If the system is powered off, connect to the system ports as described in section 2.2, "Reset to Manufacturing Default Configuration" on page 21, and log in as the admin user. The first menu shows the microcode level of the system in the Version line (Example 2-2).

Example 2-2 Current microcode level display using system port

```
System name: 8233-E8B_SN061AA6P
Version: AL730_087
User: admin
Copyright © 2002-2012 IBM Corporation. All rights reserved.
1. Power/Restart Control
2. System Service Aids
3. System Information
4. System Configuration
5. Network Services
6. Performance Setup
7. Concurrent Maintenance
8. Login Profile
99. Log out
S1>
```

If the IP address of the service processor is known, the same information is provided by using the ASMI in the upper panel of the web interface, as shown in Figure 2-3. For a description of the default IP configuration, see section 2.4, "Advanced System Management Interface IP address setup" on page 26.

IIV.	Advanced S	System Managem	ent	opyright © 2002, 2012 IBM Corporation. All rights reserved.
	8233-E8B_SI	N061AA6P	Microcode Level —	AL730_087
User ID: admin Password: •••••• Language: English v Log in		Welcome Machine type-model: 8233-E8B Serial number: 061AA6P Date: 2012-9-28 Time: 14:46:56 UTC Service Processor: Primary (Loca User Status User ID Status dev Disabled celogin Enabled celogin1 Disabled celogin2 Disabled	ation: U78A0.001.DNWHZW	R-P1)

Figure 2-3 Current microcode level display by using the ASMI

If the system microcode must be updated, the code and installation instructions are available from the IBM Fix Central website:

http://www.ibm.com/support/fixcentral

**Fix Central website:** You are required to provide some information about your system in the Fix Central website to retrieve the correct code and instructions.

Microcode can be installed through one of the following methods:

- ► HMC
- Running operating system
- Running IVM
- Diagnostic CD

The HMC and running operating system methods require the system to be reset to the Manufacturing Default Configuration before you install the IVM. If the system is already running the IVM, refer to section 5.2.1, "Microcode update" on page 185 for instructions.

To use a diagnostic CD, a serial connection to the system port is required with the setup that is described in section 2.2, "Reset to Manufacturing Default Configuration" on page 21. You must download the latest **Microcode Update Files & Discovery Tool CD** set. You can download at the tool at this website:

http://www-304.ibm.com/webapp/set2/firmware/gjsn?mode=10&page=cdrom.html

The following steps describe how to update the microcode by using a diagnostic CD:

- 1. Insert the diagnostic CD in the system drive and start the system from it. Follow steps 1 8 as described in section 3.1, "Virtual I/O Server image installation" on page 42.
- 2. Follow the instructions on the window until the main menu window (Example 2-3) opens.

Example 2-3 Main diagnostic CD menu

FUNCTION SELECTION

1 Diagnostic Routines This selection will test the machine hardware. Wrap plugs and other advanced functions will not be used. 2 Advanced Diagnostics Routines This selection will test the machine hardware. Wrap plugs and other advanced functions will be used. 3 Task Selection (Diagnostics, Advanced Diagnostics, Service Aids, etc.) This selection will list the tasks supported by these procedures. Once a task is selected, a resource menu may be presented showing all resources supported by the task. 4 Resource Selection This selection will list the resources in the system that are supported by these procedures. Once a resource is selected, a task menu will be presented showing all tasks that can be run on the resource(s). 99 Exit Diagnostics NOTE: The terminal is not properly initialized. You will be prompted to initialize the terminal after selecting one of the above options.

To make a selection, type the number and press Enter. [ ]

- 4. Select Task Selection (Diagnostics, Advanced Diagnostics, Service Aids, etc.)  $\rightarrow$  Update and Manage System Flash  $\rightarrow$  Validate and Update System Firmware.
- 5. Select the CD drive from the menu.
- 6. Select the wanted flash image for your server by pressing the F4 key (or use the Esc-4 sequence if the console does not support it). This key provides a list of available flash images on the CD. If the wanted message does not show in the list, use the F3 key (or Esc-3 sequence) two times to return to the Validate and Update System Firmware menu. Then, change to the second Microcode Update Files & Discovery Tool CD, and try again.

<sup>3.</sup> Remove the diagnostic CD from the drive and insert the first *Microcode Update Files & Discovery Tool CD*.

If you select a flash update image that is not valid for your server, the window in Example 2-4 is displayed. If you get this message, use **F3** (or **Esc-3** sequence) to return to the previous menu option, and select a valid flash update image.

Example 2-4 Invalid firmware image file message

UPDATE AND MANAGE FLASH 802835

The file provided is not a valid firmware image. Verify that the file is a firmware image appropriate for this system's model and type. Verify that the firmware image is not corrupted. If neither check leads to the source of the problem, then contact your service support structure.

F3=Cancel Esc+0=Exit Enter

- 7. After you select the correct flash update image file, press the **F7** key to commit. If the console does not support it, use the **Esc-7** sequence.
- 8. On the final window, which is shown in Example 2-5, select **YES** and wait for the firmware update to be completed and for the subsequent system reboot to be executed.

Example 2-5 Confirmation panel for microcode update

UPDATE AND MANAGE F	LASH	802816
The image is valid The new firmware le	and would update the temporary image to AL730_095. wel for the permanent image would be AL730_087.	
The current permane The current tempora	nt system firmware image is AL730_087. ry system firmware image is AL730_087.	
***** WARNING: Cont	inuing will reboot the system! *****	
Do you wish to cont	inue?	
Make selection, use	'Enter' to continue.	
NO YES		
F3=Cancel	Esc+0=Exit	

## 2.4 Advanced System Management Interface IP address setup

The service processor is equipped with two standard Ethernet ports, labeled HMC1 and HMC2, for network access. In an IVM environment, they are used to access Advanced System Management Interface (ASMI) menus by using a web browser. ASMI enables remote hardware administration and service agent setup and relies on the HTTPS protocol. Both Ethernet ports can be used if a valid network address is given.

By default, when the system is connected to a power source and the service processor starts, a *Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol* (*DHCP*) request is sent in the network through both HMC ports. If a DHCP server is available, it provides an IP address to the port; otherwise, Table 2-1 shows default IP addresses values that are used.

Platform	SP	SP	Subnet Mask
	HMC1	HMC2	
POWER5	192.168.2.147	192.168.3.147	255.255.255.0
POWER6 or POWER7 169.254.2.147		169.254.3.147	255.255.255.0
Platform	Redundant SP	Redundant SP	Subnet Mask
	HMC1	HMC2	
POWER5	192.168.2.146	192.168.3.146	255.255.255.0
POWER6 or POWER7	169.254.2.146	169.254.3.146	255.255.255.0

Table 2-1 Default Service Processor (SP) IP addresses

The DHCP-managed addresses are mainly intended to be used in an HMC environment. IVM can show the IP addresses of both HMC ports. However, when the system is powered off and IVM is not running, it might become difficult to contact ASMI because the addresses might change when the service processor reboots.

The IP configuration of the ports can be changed by using the ASMI menu or connecting to the system serial ports. ASMI can be reached only if the current IP configuration is known or if the default addresses are in use. Serial ports are available for service processor access only if the system is powered off.

#### 2.4.1 Address setting using the ASMI

The following procedure uses the default address that is assigned to port HMC1. This address is in use if no other address has been manually configured and if no DHCP server gave an IP address to the port when the system was connected to a power source. If you are unsure about DHCP, disconnect the Ethernet cable from the HMC1 port, remove all power to the system, reconnect the power, and then wait for the service processor to start.

You need a system that is equipped with a web browser (Netscape 7.1, Microsoft Internet Explorer 6.0, Opera 7.23, or later versions) and configured with the following network configuration:

- ▶ IP 192.168.2.148 for POWER5, or 169.254.2.148 for POWER6 or POWER7
- Netmask 255.255.255.0

Use the following steps to set up the addressing:

- 1. Use an Ethernet cable to connect the HMC1 port with the Ethernet port of your system.
- 2. Connect the web browser by using the following URL:

https://192.168.2.147 for POWER5; https://169.254.2.147 for POWER6 or POWER7

3. Log in as the user admin with the password admin.

- 4. Expand the **Network Services** menu and click **Network Configuration**, then select **IPV4**. After that, you can configure the IP. Figure 2-4 shows the corresponding menu.
- 5. Complete the fields with the wanted network settings and click **Continue**. The Network interface eth0 corresponds to port HMC1; eth1 corresponds to HMC2.

	Advanced System Management			
Log out User ID	: admin	8233-E8B_SN061AA6P	AL730_0	)87
<ul> <li>Expand all menus</li> <li>Collapse all menus</li> <li>Power/Restart Control</li> <li>System Service Aids</li> <li>System Information</li> <li>System Configuration</li> <li>Network Services Network Configuration Network Access OS Console</li> <li>Performance Setup</li> <li>On Demand Utilities</li> <li>Concurrent Maintenance</li> <li>Login Profile</li> </ul>		Network Configuration Network interface eth0 Configure this interface? MAC address: E4:1F:13:6F:28:40 IPv4: Enabled Type of IP address: Static Host name: fsp1 IP address: 172.16.20.207 Subnet mask: 255.252.0	0	
		Default gateway: 172.16.20.1 Network interface eth1 Configure this interface? MAC address: E4:1F:13:6F:28:41 IPv4: Enabled V ?	0	>

Figure 2-4 HMC1 port setup using the ASMI

6. Review your configuration and click **Save settings** to apply the change.

#### 2.4.2 Address setting using serial ports

When the IP addresses of the HMC port are not known and the ASMI cannot be used, it is possible to access the service processor by attaching an ASCII console to one of the system serial ports.

The following steps describe how to assign a fixed IP address to an HMC port:

- 1. Power off the system.
- 2. Connect to the system port as described in 2.2, "Reset to Manufacturing Default Configuration" on page 21.
- 3. Select 5 for the Network Services menu and select 1 for Network Configuration.

Example 2-6 shows the steps to configure the port HMC1. The menu enables you to configure the interfaces Eth0 and Eth1 that correspond to system ports HMC1 and HMC2. To define a fixed IP address, provide the IP address, netmask, and, possibly, the default gateway.

Example 2-6 HMC1 port configuration

```
Network Configuration
 1. Configure interface Eth0
 2. Configure interface Eth1
98. Return to previous menu
99. Log out
S1> 1
Configure interface Eth0
MAC address: 00:02:55:2F:BD:E0
Type of IP address
Currently: Dynamic
1. Dynamic
        Currently: 169.254.2.147
 2. Static
98. Return to previous menu
99. Log out
S1> 2
Configure interface Eth0
MAC address: 00:02:55:2F:BD:E0
Type of IP address: Static
1. Host name
2. Domain name
 3. IP address (Currently: 169.254.2.147)
4. Subnet mask
 5. Default gateway
 6. IP address of first DNS server
 7. IP address of second DNS server
 8. IP address of third DNS server
 9. Save settings and reset the service processor
98. Return to previous menu
99. Log out
S1>
```

# 2.5 Virtualization feature activation

This step is needed only if the system is not yet enabled with virtualization. Normally, new systems that are ordered with this feature arrive from manufacturing with the virtualization active.

Virtualization is enabled by using a specific code that is shipped with the system. Or, the code can be retrieved from the following Capacity on Demand website after you provide the system type and serial number:

http://www-912.ibm.com/pod/pod

The ASMI is used to activate the virtualization feature without an IVM or HMC.

Activation of virtualization using ASMI: For ASMI access, refer to the following website and look for your server Type/Model:

http://pic.dhe.ibm.com/infocenter/powersys/v3r1m5/index.jsp?topic=/ipha8/hwicwe lcome.htm

As an example, here is the link for an 8202-E4B (Power 720) POWER7 processor-based server ASMI access:

http://pic.dhe.ibm.com/infocenter/powersys/v3r1m5/index.jsp?topic=/p7hby/browse
r.htm

This procedure works for any POWER7 processor-based server ASMI access.

To enter the activation feature, use the following steps:

1. Connect to the ASMI with a web browser by using the HTTPS protocol to the IP address of one of the HMC ports and log in as the user admin. The default password is admin.

 Set the system in the standby state. Expand the Power/Restart Control menu and click Power On/Off System. Figure 2-5 shows the corresponding ASMI menu. In the boot to system server firmware field, select Standby and click Save settings and power off.

IEV.	Advan	ced System Management	Copyright © 2002, 2012 IBM Corporation. All rights reserved.
Log out User ID: a	admin	8233-E8B_SN061AA6P	AL730_087
<ul> <li>Expand all menut</li> <li>Collapse all menut</li> <li>Power/Restart</li> <li>Power On/Off S</li> <li>Auto Power Restant</li> <li>Rebood</li> <li>System Rebood</li> <li>Wake On LAN</li> <li>System Service</li> <li>System Informat</li> <li>System Config</li> <li>Network Service</li> <li>Performance S</li> <li>On Demand Ut</li> <li>Concurrent Ma</li> <li>Login Profile</li> </ul>	s us Control System System System System Ver Off t e Aids ation uration ces etup ilities intenance	Power On/Off System         Current system power state: On         Current firmware boot side: Temporary         Current system server firmware state: Running         System diagnostic level for the next boot: Normal         Firmware boot side for the next boot: Temporary ♥ ⑦         System operating mode: Normal ♥ ⑦         AIX/Linux partition mode boot: Continue to operating system         Server firmware start policy: Standby (User-Initiated)         System power off policy: Automatic ♥ ⑦         i5/OS partition mode boot: A ♥ ⑦         Default Partition Environment: AIX ♥ ⑦         Save settings ⑦         Save settings and power off ⑦	

Figure 2-5 ASMI menu for Power On/Off System

3. You can look for on demand information about the system with the following ASMI panels, as shown in Figure 2-6.



Figure 2-6 On Demand Utilities panel: CoD (capacity on demand) Order Information option

4. In the same On Demand Utilities panel, you can also find CoD VET (capacity on demand Virtualization Engine Technologies) information, as shown in Figure 2-7.

IEM. Advanc	ed System Management	Copyright © 2002, 2012 IBM Corporation. All rights reserved.
Log out User ID: admin	8233-E8B_SN061AA6P	AL730_087
<ul> <li>Expand all menus</li> <li>Collapse all menus</li> <li>Power/Restart Control</li> <li>System Service Aids</li> <li>System Information</li> <li>System Configuration</li> <li>Network Services</li> <li>Performance Setup</li> <li>On Demand Utilities CoD Order Information CoD Activation CoD Recovery CoD Command CoD Processor Information CoD VET Information</li> <li>VET Capability Settings</li> <li>Concurrent Maintenance</li> <li>Login Profile</li> </ul>	CoD VET Information         System type: 8233         System serial number: 06-1AA6P         Card type: 52B6         Card serial number: 07-808100E         Card ID: 0213204141420C5B         Resource ID: CA1F         Activated Resources: 0000         Sequence number: 0040         Entry check: C8	

Figure 2-7 On Demand Utilities panel: CoD VET Information option

 Enter the activation code as soon as the system finishes booting. Expand the On Demand Utilities menu and click CoD Activation. Figure 2-8 shows the corresponding menu. Enter the code that is provided to activate the feature in the specific system and click Continue. A confirmation message is displayed.

	Advanc	ed System Management	Copyright © 2002, 2012 IBM Corporation. All rights reserved.
Log out User ID: a	admin	8233-E8B_SN061AA6P	AL730_087
<ul> <li>         Expand all menus         Collapse all menus      </li> <li>         Power/Restart      </li> <li>         System Service      </li> <li>         System Informa      </li> <li>         System Config      </li> <li>         System Config      </li> <li>         Network Service      </li> <li>         Performance S      </li> <li>         On Demand Uff         CoD Order Infor      </li> <li>         CoD Activation      </li> <li>         CoD Processo      </li> <li>         Concurrent Ma      </li> <li>         Login Profile     </li> </ul>	s us Control e Aids ation uration ces etup ilities ormation d r Information mation $\gamma$ Settings intenance	Continue Fill in the activation code	]

Figure 2-8 ASMI virtualization menu for code activation

6. Set the system in running mode and shut it off. Again, select the **Power On/Off System** menu, select **Running** for the boot to system server firmware field, and click **Save** settings and power off, as shown in Figure 2-9.

	Advanc	ed System Management	yright © 2002, 2012 IBM Corporation. All rights reserved.
Log out User ID	admin	8233-E8B_SN061AA6P	AL730_087
<ul> <li>Expand all men</li> <li>Collapse all me</li> <li>Power/Restar</li> <li>Power On/Off</li> <li>Auto Power F</li> <li>Immediate Po</li> <li>System Rebo</li> <li>Wake On LAN</li> <li>System Servi</li> <li>System Inform</li> <li>System Confii</li> <li>Network Servi</li> <li>Performance</li> <li>On Demand U</li> <li>Concurrent M</li> <li>Login Profile</li> </ul>	us nus t Control 5 System Restart ower Off vot v ce Aids nation guration guration guration Setup Jtilities aintenance	Power On/Off System         Current system power state: On         Current firmware boot side: Temporary         Current system server firmware state: Running         System diagnostic level for the next boot: Normal         Firmware boot side for the next boot: Temporary ♥ ⑦         System operating mode: Normal ♥ ⑦         AIX/Linux partition mode boot: Continue to operating system ♥ ⑦         Server firmware start policy: Running (Auto-Start Always) ♥ ⑦         System power off policy: Automatic ♥ ⑦         i5/OS partition mode boot: A ♥ ⑦         Default Partition Environment: AIX ♥ ⑦         Save settings ⑦         Save settings and power off ⑦	

Figure 2-9 ASMI menu to bring system in running mode and power off

After you install the IVM on the server (for more information, see section 3.1, "Virtual I/O Server image installation" on page 42), you can also activate the virtualization feature through the IVM Management panel, as shown in Figure 2-10.

Integrated Virtualization Manager	IBM.
Welcome padmin : vios1	Edit my profile   Help   Log out
Partition Management	Enter PowerVM Edition Key
<u>View/Modify Partitions</u> <u>View/Modify System Properties</u> <u>View/Modify Shared Memory Pool</u>	To enable the PowerVM Edition feature, contact your sales representative to obtain an PowerVM Edition key, and enter it below.
I/O Adapter Management	PowerVM Edition key:
<u>View/Modify Host Ethernet</u> Adapters <u>View/Modify Virtual Ethernet</u> View/Modify Physical Adapters <u>View/Modify Physical Adapters</u> <u>View Virtual Fibre Channel</u>	Apply Reset
Virtual Storage Management	
<u>View/Modify Virtual Storage</u>	
IVM Management	
<u>View/Modify User Accounts</u> <u>View/Modify TCP/IP Settings</u> <u>Guided Setup</u> <u>Enter PowerVM Edition Key</u>	
Service Management	
Electronic Service Agent     Service Focal Point     Manage Serviceable Events     Service Utilities     Create Serviceable Event     Manage Dumps     Collect VPD Information	
<u>Dpdates</u> <u>Backup/Restore</u>	
Application Logs     Monitor Tasks     Hardware Inventory	
Figure 2.10 IV/M many for Ent	ar Dowerl/M Edition Kow

Figure 2-10 IVM menu for Enter PowerVM Edition Key

**PowerVM activation:** This PowerVM activation option can be helpful if you are doing a PowerVM Key upgrade. From PowerVM Express for PowerVM Standard, for example. That way, there is no need to access the ASMI.

# 2.6 Accessing the server using AMM in a blade environment

To use the PowerVM features in a POWER processor-based blade, it is mandatory to have IVM installed.

It is possible to do this installation by configuring Serial Over LAN (SoL) through the *advanced management module* (*AMM*) in the IBM BladeCenter chassis.

**SoL in BladeCenter:** For more details about how to configure SoL in a BladeCenter environment, access the information center website:

http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/bladectr/documentation/index.jsp?topic =/com.ibm.bladecenter.advmgtmod.doc/bc\_sol\_guide.html

And for more information about enabling IVM on a BladeCenter with a POWER processor-based blade, see this website:

http://pic.dhe.ibm.com/infocenter/powersys/v3r1m5/index.jsp?topic=/p7hchl/iphch
installblade.htm

After you access the **POWER processor-based blade** interface, follow installation procedures as described in section 3.1, "Virtual I/O Server image installation" on page 42.

# 2.7 Accessing the server by using serial link

For setup of serial link access to the server, place your server on standby state.

The serial links are used to connect to an ASCII terminal to manage a server that is running the AIX, Linux, or Virtual I/O Server operating systems. From the ASCII terminal, you can also access the ASMI to perform more installation tasks.

It is an alternative choice compared with ASMII web browser access, as mentioned in section 2.4, "Advanced System Management Interface IP address setup" on page 26.

The ASCII terminal is connected to the server through a serial link. The ASCII interface to the ASMI provides a subset of the web interface functions.

To access a Power server through its serial port, follow these steps:

1. By using a serial cable, connect the ASCII terminal to system connector 1 (P1-T1, which is the default) or 2 (P1-T2) on the rear of the server, as shown in Figure 2-11, Figure 2-12 on page 38, and Figure 2-13 on page 38.



Figure 2-11 Power 730/Power 740 rear view



Figure 2-12 Power 720/Power 740 rear view

**Conversion cable:** For Power 710, Power 720, Power 730, and Power 740 servers, if you are using a serial connection to the ASMI terminal, you must use a conversion cable. This cable (part number 46K5108; feature code #3930) is used to convert the ASCII terminal 9–pin Dshell connector to an RJ45 serial port connector on the system.



Figure 2-13 Power 750 rear view

- 2. Connect the power cord from the server to a power source.
- 3. Wait for the green light on the control panel to start flashing.

4. Ensure that your ASCII terminal is set to the general attributes, as shown in Table 2-2.

General setup attributes	3151 /11/31/41 settings	3151 /51/61 settings	3151 /51/61 settings	Description
Line speed	19,200	19,200	19,200	Uses the 19,200 (bits per second) line speed to communicate with the system unit.
Word length (bits)	8	8	8	Selects 8 bits as a data word length (byte).
Parity	No	No	No	Does not add a parity bit and is used together with the word length attribute to form the 8-bit data word (byte).
Stop bit	1	1	1	Places a bit after a data word (byte).

Table 2-2 ASCII general attributes

5. Press a key on the ASCII terminal to allow the service processor to confirm the presence of the ASCII terminal.

- 6. When the login display is displayed for the ASMI, enter *admin* for the user ID and password.
- 7. Change the default password when you are prompted.
- 8. You completed the setup for an ASCII terminal and started the ASMI.

To see how to access ASMI through a web browser, refer to section 2.4.1, "Address setting using the ASMI" on page 27.

**ASMI access:** For more information about ASMI access, see the Systems Hardware information website:

http://pic.dhe.ibm.com/infocenter/powersys/v3r1m5/topic/p7hby/ascii.htm

# 3



# Install

This chapter describes the different ways by which you can install the Virtual I/O Server. After that it explains the basic setup of Virtual I/O Server, network and storage management.

# 3.1 Virtual I/O Server image installation

The Virtual I/O Server is shipped as an optical media set that contains a bootable image of the software. It contains the IVM component. Installing it requires a serial connection to the system port with the setup described in 2.2, "Reset to Manufacturing Default Configuration" on page 21.

The following steps describe how to install the Virtual I/O Server:

- Power on the system by using either the ASMI or pushing the power-on (white) button at the front of the system.
- When you connect by using a TTY to the serial connection, you might be prompted to define it as an active console. If so, press the key that is indicated on the window.
- If this is the first power-on of the system after a Manufacturing Default Configuration reset, you must accept the *License Agreement* to continue.
- 4. Wait for the *system management services* (*SMS*) menu selection, as shown in Example 3-1, and enter 1 after the word keyboard is displayed on the window.

- 5. Wait for *Language Selection Menu*. Select **2** to proceed to SMS main menu. When requested, provide the password for the admin user of the service processor. The default password is admin.
- 6. Insert the Virtual I/O Server installation media in the drive.
- Use the SMS menus to select the CD or DVD device to boot. Select Select Boot
   Options → Select Install/Boot Device → CD/DVD. Select the CD/DVD media type of the
   system. Choose the correct device from a list, similar to the one shown in Example 3-2.

Example 3-2 Choose optical device from which to boot

```
PowerPC Firmware

Version EL350_132

SMS 1.7 (c) Copyright IBM Corp. 2000,2008 All rights reserved.

Select Device

Device Current Device

Number Position Name

1. 1 SATA CD-ROM

(loc=U78A0.0 1.DNWGPL0-P2-D2)

Navigation keys:

M = return to Main Menu
```

ESC key = return to previous screen X = eXit System Management Services Type the number of the menu item and press Enter or select Navigation Key:1

- 8. Select Normal Mode Boot and exit from the SMS menu.
- 9. Select the console number and press Enter.
- 10. Select the preferred installation language from the menu.
- 11.Select the installation preferences. Choose the default settings, as shown in Example 3-3.

Example 3-3 Virtual I/O Server installation setup

Welcome to Base Operating System Installation and Maintenance

Type the number of your choice and press Enter. Choice is indicated by >>>.

>>> 1 Start Install Now with Default Settings

- 2 Change/Show Installation Settings and Install
- 3 Start Maintenance Mode for System Recovery
- 4 Configure Network Disks (iSCSI)
- 5 Select Storage Adapters
- 88 Help ?
  99 Previous Menu
- >>> Choice [1]: 1
- 12.Wait for the Virtual I/O Server restore. A progress status is shown, as in Example 3-4. At the end, Virtual I/O Server reboots.

Example 3-4 Virtual I/O Server installation progress status

Installing Base Operating System

Please wait...

Approximate	Elapsed t	time
% tasks complete	(in minut	tes)
28	7	29% of mksysb data restored.

13. If your Virtual I/O Server media has more than one volume, the prompt that is shown in Example 3-5, is displayed. Remove volume 1 from the DVD drive and insert volume 2. Press Enter key to continue.

Example 3-5 Media change request

Please remove volume 1, insert volume 2, and press the ENTER key.

14. After you finish the Virtual I/O Server restore, the system automatically reboots. When the console prompt is displayed, log in to the Virtual I/O Server by using the user padmin and the default password padmin. When prompted, change the login password to something secure.

Accept the Virtual I/O Server license by issuing the license -accept command.

#### 3.1.1 Virtual I/O Server image installation from the NIM server

It is possible to use a *Network Installation Management (NIM)* server to install the Virtual I/O Server. For more information, refer to the *NIM installation and backup of the VIO server* technote:

http://www.ibm.com/support/docview.wss?uid=isg3T1011386

# 3.2 Initial configuration

The new Virtual I/O Server requires a simple configuration setup using the command-line interface. Then, all management is done by using the web interface.

#### 3.2.1 Set the date and time

Use the **chdate** command to set the Virtual I/O Server date and time, using the following syntax:

chdate [-year YYyy] [-month mm] [-day dd] [-hour HH] [-minute MM] [-timezone TZ] chdate mmddHHMM[YYyy | yy] [-timezone TZ]

#### 3.2.2 Initial network setup

The IVM web interface requires a valid network configuration to work. Configure the IP by choosing a physical network adapter and issuing the **mktcpip** command from the command line, using the following syntax:

```
mktcpip -hostname HostName -inetaddr Address -interface Interface
[-start] [-netmask SubnetMask] [-cabletype CableType]
[-gateway Gateway] [-nsrvaddr NameServerAddress
[-nsrvdomain Domain]]
mktcpip -auto [-interface Interface]
mktcpip -hostname HostName -inetaddr Address -interface Interface
[-start] [-cabletype CableType]
[-gateway Gateway] [-nsrvaddr NameServerAddress
-nsrvdomain Domain] [-plen prefixLength]
```

Example 3-6 shows the setup of the host name, address, and IP address for the IVM.

Example 3-6 IVM network setup at the command line

```
$ mktcpip -hostname vios1 -inetaddr 172.16.20.200 -interface en0 -start -netmask
255.255.255.000 -gateway
172.16.20.1
```

Valid name resolution: The IVM, like a web server, requires a valid name resolution to work correctly. If DNS is involved, check that both the name and IP address resolution of the IVM host name are correct.

After the IVM web server has access to the network, it is possible to use the web graphical user interface (GUI) with the HTTP or the HTTPS protocol pointing to the IP address of the IVM server application. Authentication requires the use of the padmin user, unless other users were created.

#### 3.2.3 Changing the TCP/IP settings on the Virtual I/O Server

The IVM enables you to change the TCP/IP settings on the Virtual I/O Server through the GUI.

Use any role other than the View Only role to do this task. Users with the View Only role can view the TCP/IP settings but cannot change them.

Before you can view or modify the TCP/IP settings, you must have an active network interface.

**Important:** Modifying your TCP/IP settings remotely might result in the loss of access to the current session. Ensure that you have physical console access to the IVM partition before you change the TCP/IP settings.

To view or modify the TCP/IP settings, do the following steps:

1. From the IVM Management menu, click **View/Modify TCP/IP Settings**. The View/Modify TCP/IP Settings panel opens, as shown in Figure 3-1.

View/Modify TCP/IP Settings
WARNING: Modifying your TCP/IP settings remotely may result in the loss of access to this web server session. Make sure you have physical console access to the Integrated Virtualization Manager partition prior to making changes.
Modify the TCP/IP settings, and select Apply. This will apply the settings in all tabs. Select Reset to reset all values to their current state.
General Network Interfaces Name Services Routing
Hostname: vios1
Domain name:
Partition communication:
✓ Default
172.16.20.200
Apply Reset

Figure 3-1 View/Modify TCP/IP settings

- 2. Depending on which setting you want to view or modify, click one of the following tabs:
  - General to view or modify the host name and the partition communication IP address
  - Network Interfaces to view or modify the network interface properties, such as the IP address, subnet mask, MAC Address, and the state of the network interface
  - Name Services to view or modify the domain name, name server search order, and domain server search order
  - Routing to view or modify the default gateway
- 3. Click Apply to activate the new settings.

# 3.3 Virtual I/O Server partition configuration

After you complete the network configuration of the Virtual I/O Server, the IVM interface is available and can be accessed by using a web browser. Connect using HTTP or HTTPS to the IP address assigned to Virtual I/O Server and log in as the user padmin.

The first panel that opens after the login process is the partition configuration, as shown in Figure 3-2 on page 47. After the initial installation of the IVM, there is only the Virtual I/O Server partition on the system with the following characteristics:

- The ID is 1.
- The name is equal to the serial number of the system.
- The state is Running.

- The allocated memory is the maximum value between 512 MB and one-eighth of the installed system memory. (In Figure 3-2, we are using a 32 GB server so it is showing 4 GB of allocated memory for the Virtual I/O Server partition).
- The number of virtual processors is equal to or greater than the number of processing units. The processing units are equal to at least 0.1 times the total number of virtual processors in the LPAR.

Integrated Virtualization Manager								2 900	IEM.
Welcome padmin : vios1								Edit my profile	Help   Log out
Partition Management View/Modify Partitions						?			
<u>View/Modify Partitions</u> <u>View/Modify System Properties</u> <u>View/Modify Shared Memory Pool</u>	To perform	m an action on <b>Overview</b>	a partition,	first select t	he partitio	n or partition:	s, and then select th	e task.	
I/O Adapter Management	Total syst	tem memory:		1	28 GB	Total p	rocessing units:	16	
View/Modify Host Ethernet Adapters     View/Modify Virtual Ethernet     View/Modify Physical Adapters     View Virtual Fibre Channel	Memory a Reserved System a	available: I firmware mem attention LED:	iory:	1 1 I	.10.75 GB 25 GB nactive	Process Process	sing units available: sor pool utilization:	14.4 0.29	(1.8%)
Virtual Storage Management	Partition	1 Details							
<u>View/Modify Virtual Storage</u>		3 😼   \star 🕻	Create Part	ition Acti	vate Shu	itdown M	lore Tasks	*	
IVM Management	Select ]	ID ^ Name	<u>State</u>	Uptime	Memory	Processors	Entitled Processing Units	Utilized Processing Units	Reference Code
<u>View/Modify User Accounts</u> <u>View/Modify TCP/IP Settings</u> <u>Guided Setup</u> <u>Enter PowerVM Edition Key</u>		1 <u>06-</u> <u>1AA6P</u>	Running	11.2 Minutes	16 GB	16	1.6	0.28	
Service Management									
Electronic Service Agent     Service Focal Point     Manage Serviceable Events     Service Utilities     Create Serviceable Event     Manage Dumps     Collect VPD Information     Updates     Backup/Restore     Application Logs     Monitor Tasks     Hardware Inventory									

Figure 3-2 IVM (Virtual I/O Server) initial partition configuration

The default configuration for the partition is designed to be appropriate for most IVM installations. If the administrator wants to change memory or processing unit allocation of the Virtual I/O Server partition, a dynamic reconfiguration action can be made either using the web GUI or the command line, as described in 4.7, "Logical partition configuration changes" on page 101. Dynamic reconfiguration (Dynamic Logical Partitioning) of memory, processors, and I/O adapters of any client partitions is also supported.

### 3.4 Network management

When installed, the Virtual I/O Server configures one network device for each physical Ethernet that is present on the system. The server also creates four virtual Ethernet adapters, each belonging to a separate virtual network.

Any partition can be created with its own virtual adapters connected to any of the four available virtual networks. No bridging is provided with physical adapters at installation time.

The IVM enables any virtual network to be bridged by using any physical adapter, if the same physical adapter is not used to bridge more than one virtual network.

In 4.9, "Network management" on page 123, we describe the network bridging setup.

Since IVM 1.5, it is possible to configure dedicated I/O adapters for any client partitions.

Initially, all of the I/O resources are designated for the Virtual I/O Server LPARs. This configuration can be changed by the Dynamic Logical Partitioning process deallocating any I/O resources that you want to dedicate for client LPARs. You can use this process for Ethernet adapters also.

# 3.5 Virtual Storage management

The IVM uses the following virtual storage management concepts:

Physical volume	A physical disk or a logical unit number (LUN) on a storage area network (SAN). They are all owned by the IVM. A physical volume not belonging to any storage pool can be assigned whole to a single partition as a virtual device.
Storage pool	A set of physical volumes that is treated as a single entity. There can be multiple pools and they cannot share physical disks. One pool is defined as the <i>default storage pool</i> .
Virtual disk	Logical volume that the IVM assigns to a single partition as a virtual device.

Both physical volumes and virtual disks can be assigned to an LPAR to provide disk space. Each of them is represented by the LPAR operating system as a single disk. For example, assigning a 146.8 GB physical disk and a 10 GB virtual disk to an LPAR running AIX 7.1 makes the operating system create two hdisk devices.

At installation time, there is only one storage pool, named *rootvg* (root volume group), which normally contains only one physical volume. All remaining physical volumes are available but not assigned to any pool.

The rootvg pool is used for IVM management, and we do not recommend using it to provide disk space to LPARs. Because it is the only pool that is available at installation time, it is also defined as the *default pool*. Create another pool and set it as the default before you create other partitions.

**Important:** Create at least one more storage pool so that the rootvg pool is not the default storage pool.

You can use rootvg as a storage pool on a system that is equipped with a SAS RAID adapter when all of the physical disks are configured as a single RAID array. In this case, the administrator must first boot the server using the Standalone Diagnostics CD-ROM that is provided with the system, and create the array. During the Virtual I/O Server image installation, only one disk is available, representing the array itself.

From any storage pool, virtual disks can be defined and configured. They can be created in several ways, depending on the IVM menu that is used:

- During LPAR creation. A virtual disk is created in the default storage pool and assigned to the partition.
- Using the View/Modify Virtual Storage menu on the Virtual Disk tab, using the Create Virtual Disk button. At this time, you can choose which storage pool belongs to the virtual disk and if you want to assign it for a specific partition or not (you can do it later, or in the Partition Properties window).

We describe basic storage management in 4.2.3, "Storage pool disk management" on page 52, and in 4.10, "Storage management" on page 133.

# 4

# Set up

This chapter explains how to work with Integrated Virtualization Manager (IVM) both in a graphical user interface (GUI) and command-line interface (CLI).

It describes configuring and working on client logical partitions (LPARs), changing configurations both in storage and network, and also working on the console.

This chapter explains how to configure and work with the advanced virtualization features like:

- ► N\_Port ID Virtualization
- Active Memory Sharing
- Live Partition Mobility

This chapter also describes the following advanced configurations on networking, storage management, and security:

- Virtual Ethernet bridging
- Ethernet link aggregation
- Disk space management
- Disk data protection
- Virtual I/O Server firewall
- Secure Shell (SSH) support

# 4.1 Configure and manage partitions

The IVM provides several ways to configure and manage LPARs:

- By use of a GUI, which is designed to be as simple and intuitive as possible, incorporating partition management, storage management, serviceability, and monitoring capabilities. See 4.2, "IVM graphical user interface" on page 50.
- By use of a CLI to enable scripting capabilities. See 4.5, "IVM command-line interface" on page 95.
- In the GUI of the IVM, there is also a so-called *simple partition creation* by using the option "Create Based On" in the task area. See 4.4.1, "Create an LPAR based on an existing partition" on page 89.

The following sections explain these methods.

# 4.2 IVM graphical user interface

The graphical user interface (GUI) of the IVM is an HTML-based interface. It enables you to create LPARs on a single managed system, manage system properties, manage physical adapters, manage the virtual storage and virtual Ethernet on the managed system, and view service information that is related to the managed system.

#### 4.2.1 Connect to the IVM

Open a web browser window and connect by using the HTTP or HTTPS protocol to the IP address or host name that was assigned to the IVM during the installation process, as described in 3.2.2, "Initial network setup" on page 44. As a result, a Welcome window that contains the login and the password prompts opens, as shown in Figure 4-1. The default user ID is padmin, and the password you defined at IVM installation time.

🖉 Integrated Virtualization Manager - vios1 - Windows Internet Explorer provided by IBM	
🚱 🔍 🖉 http://172.16.20.200/login.faces 🚤 💌 😝 🗙	<b>P</b> -
Content of Virtualization Manager - vios1     IVM's IP address	
Integrated Virtualization Manager	IBM.
Welcome, please enter your information.	
<ul> <li>* User ID:</li> <li>* Password:</li> <li>Log in</li> <li>Please note: After some time of inactivity, the system will log you out automatically and ask you to log in</li> <li>This product includes Eclipse technology.</li> <li>(http://www.eclipse.org)</li> <li>* Required field</li> </ul>	ı again.

Figure 4-1 IVM login page

After the authentication process, the default IVM console window opens, as shown in Figure 4-2. The IVM GUI is composed of two elements.

The following elements are the most important:

- **Navigation area** The navigation area displays the tasks that you can access in the work area.
- **Work area** The work area contains information that is related to the management tasks that you perform using the IVM and to the objects on which you can perform management tasks.

Integrated Virtualization Manager								111	0	IEM.
Welcome padmin : vios1									Edit my profile	Help   Log out
Partition Management	View/№	lodify F	artitions							2
<u>View/Modify Partitions</u> <u>View/Modify System Properties</u> <u>View/Modify Shared Memory Pool</u>	To perfo System	orm an a	action on a partit <b>/iew</b>	tion, first sel	ect the pa	rtition or p	partitions, and	l then select the	: task.	
I/O Adapter Management	Total sy	stem m	emory:		1	28 GB	Total proce	ssing units:	16	
View/Modify Host Ethernet Adapters     View/Modify Virtual Ethernet     View/Modify Physical Adapters     View Virtual Fibre Channel Virtual Storage Management	Memory Reserve Availab System	/ availat ed firmv le share attentio	ole: vare memory: d memory pool on LED:	size:	9 5 4 Ir	6.25 GB .25 GB .75 GB nactive	Processing Processor (	units available: bool utilization:	13.3	7 3 (0.2%)
View/Modify Virtual Storage	Partitio	on Deta	ils							
IVM Management	D	6 🚳	Create	Partition	Activate	Shutdown	n More T	asks	~	
<u>View/Modify User Accounts</u> <u>View/Modify TCP/IP Settings</u> <u>Guided Setup</u>	Select	<u>ID</u> ^	<u>Name</u>	<u>State</u>	<u>Uptime</u>	Memory	Processors	Entitled Processing Units	Utilized Processing Units	Reference Code
Enter PowerVM Edition Key Service Management		1	<u>vios1</u>	Running	1.14 Days	16 GB	16	1.6	0.02	
Electronic Service Agent     Service Focal Point		2	lpar1 server1	Running	1.02 Days	4 GB	2	0.4	0.01	
Manage Serviceable Events     Service Utilities		3	lpar2 server1	Not Activated		512 MB	1	0.1		<u>00000000</u>
Create Serviceable Event     Manage Dumps     Collect VPD Information		4	lpar3 server1	Not Activated		1 GB	2	0.2		0000000
Updates Backup/Restore Application Logs Monitor Tasks Hardware Inventory	Na	viga	tion area	a '	Work	area				

Figure 4-2 IVM console: View/Modify Partitions

### 4.2.2 Guided setup

The Guided Setup window provides quick access for some important configurations to do before you start creating partitions. This window also has a link for the IVM help page (if you click **More** in each topic). Figure 4-3 shows an example of the Guided Setup for the activity to Mirror the Integrated Virtualization Manager Partition.

Integrated Virtualization Manager	
Welcome padmin : vios2	Edit my profile   Help   Log ou
Partition Management	Guided Setup
<u>View/Modify Partitions</u> <u>View/Modify System Properties</u> <u>View/Modify Shared Memory Pool</u>	The Integrated Virtualization Manager allows you to perform various management tasks on a single system, such as create logical partitions and manage virtual storage. Before you start creating logical partitions, there are a few steps that you should complete first.
I/O Adapter Management	If you have a System Plan to deploy, you should proceed directly to the Manage System Plan task.
<u>View/Modify Host Ethernet Adapters</u> <u>View/Modify Virtual Ethernet</u>	<ul> <li>Mirror the Integrated Virtualization Manager Partition</li> </ul>
<u>View/Modify Physical Adapters</u> <u>View Virtual Fibre Channel</u>	By default, the Integrated Virtualization Manager (IVM) is installed onto a single disk. If you have a spare disk, it is recommended that you add a second disk to the rootvg storage pool, and mirror the two disks. This will ensure that
Virtual Storage Management	rootvg, select the Extend task on the Storage Pools tab of the <u>View/Modify Virtual Storage</u> page. After this, run
• <u>view/Modify Virtual Storage</u>	mirrorios from a terminal session. This will take some time, and will cause the VIOS to restart. More
View/Modify User Accounts     View/Modify TCP/IP Settings     Guided Setup     Enter Sower/M Edition Key	
System Plan Management     Manage System Plans	Physical Adapter Management
Service Management	Create Partitions
Electronic Service Agent     Service Focal Point     Manage Serviceable Events     Service Utilities     Create Serviceable Event     Manage Dumps     Collect VPD Information     Updates     Backup/Restore     Application Logs     Monitor Tasks     Hardware Inventory	

Figure 4-3 Guided Setup panel: Mirror the IVM Manager Partition option

After you click each link, you are redirected to other IVM menus. The configuration of these topics is addressed in this chapter.

#### 4.2.3 Storage pool disk management

During the installation of the Virtual I/O Server, a *default storage pool* is created and named *rootvg*.

During the process of creating the LPAR, the IVM can automatically create virtual disks in the default storage pool. We recommend that you create a separate storage pool and add virtual disks to it for the LPARs. For advanced configuration of the storage pool, refer to 3.5, "Virtual Storage management" on page 48.

#### Storage pool creation

A *storage pool* consists of a set of physical disks that can be different types and sizes. You can create multiple storage pools; however, a disk can be a member of a single storage pool only.

**Important:** All data of a physical volume is erased when you add this volume to a storage pool.

The following steps describe how to create a storage pool:

- 1. Under the Virtual Storage Management menu in the navigation area, click the **View/Modify Virtual Storage** link.
- 2. Click Storage Pools tab in the work area, as shown in Figure 4-4.

/iew/Modify Virtual Storage 2								
Virtual Disks StoragenPools Physical Volumes Optical/Tape								
To perform an	action on a virtual	disk, first select the virtual disk o	r virtual disks, and then select the ta	ask.				
	🕞 🕞 🖑 K Create Virtual Disk Modify partition assignment More Tasks 💌							
Select	Name ^	Storage Pool	Assigned Partition	Size				
	lp2vd1	rootvg (Default)		40 GB				
	lp5vd1	rootvg (Default)		40 GB				

Figure 4-4 View/Modify Virtual Storage window

3. Click Create Storage Pool in the work area, as shown in Figure 4-5.

View/Modify	View/Modify Virtual Storage								
Virtual Disks	Virtual Disks Storage Pools Physical Volumes Optical/Tape								
To perform a	To perform an action on a storage pool, first select the storage pool or storage pools, and then select the task.								
Select	Select Name ^ Total Size Available Size Type								
	rootvg (Default)	136.5 GB	30.5 GB	Logical volume based					

Figure 4-5 Create Virtual Storage

4. Type a name in the *Storage pool name* field and select the wanted disks, as shown in Figure 4-6. To make this selection the default storage pool, select the **Assign as default storage pool** check box.

Create Storage Pool  To create a storage pool, enter the storage pool name and the type of storage pool to create. File based storage pools use files for virtual							
disks whereas logical volume based storage pools use logical volumes.							
* Stora	ige pool nam	e:	ams_sp				
Stora	ige pool type	:	Logical volume based 🔽				
Assign as default storage pool: 📃							
Logica	l volumo ha	cod					
LUGICa	i volume ba	seu					
A logica physical	l volume bas volumes. Se	ed storage lect one o	pool is created using unassigned r more physical volumes and select OK.				
Select	Physical Volume	Size	Physical Location Code				
	hdisk1	136.73 GB	U5802.001.0086848-P3-D3				
	hdisk2	136.73 GB	U5802.001.0086848-P3-D4				
	hdisk3	65 GB	U5802.001.0086848-P1-C1-T1- LFF0000-L0				
	hdisk4	65 GB	U5802.001.0086848-P1-C1-T1- LFF0100-L0				
	hdisk10	10 GB	U5802.001.0086848-P1-C3-T1- W201600A0B829AC12- L100000000000				
	hdisk11	10 GB	U5802.001.0086848-P1-C3-T1- W201600A0B829AC12- L200000000000				
	hdisk5	136.73 GB	U78A0.001.DNWHZWR-P2-D4				
	hdisk6	136.73 GB	U78A0.001.DNWHZWR-P2-D5				
	hdisk7	136.73 GB	U78A0.001.DNWHZWR-P2-D6				
*Required field							
OK Cancel							

Figure 4-6 Create Virtual Storage: Storage pool name

5. Click **OK** to create the storage pool. A new storage pool called *ams\_sp with hdisk1* and *hdisk2* is created.

#### Default storage pool

The default storage pool that is created during the IVM installation is *rootvg*. This is because rootvg is the only volume group that is created then.

**Important:** Create at least one more storage pool. The rootvg storage pool should not be the default storage pool. This would result in IVM and the user data being merged on the same storage devices.

Because the IVM is installed in rootvg, when IVM is reinstalled, the rootvg storage pool is overwritten. The default storage pool should also be changed to another one to avoid creating virtual disks within the rootvg by default, thus preventing the loss of user data during an IVM update.

The following steps describe how to change the default storage pool:

- 1. Under the Virtual Storage Management menu in the navigation area, click **View/Modify Virtual Storage**.
- 2. Click Storage Pools tab in the work area.
- 3. Select the storage pool that you want as the default, as shown in Figure 4-7.

۷	iew/Modify Virtual Storage							
١	Virtual Disks Storage Pools Physical Volumes Optical/Tape							
Γ	To perform an action on a storage pool, first select the storage pool or storage pools, and then select the task.							
	© D	Create Storage	Pool Extend	More Tasks	<b>v</b>			
	Select	Name ^	Total Size	Available Size	Туре			
		ams sp	273.25 GB	273.25 GB	Logical volume based			
		datapool1	129.75 GB	129.75 GB	Logical volume based			
		datapool2	409.88 GB	409.88 GB	Logical volume based			
		rootvg (Default)	136.5 GB	30.5 GB	Logical volume based			

Figure 4-7 View/Modify Virtual Storage: Storage Pools list

4. Select **Assign as default storage pool** from the **More Tasks** drop-down list, as shown in Figure 4-8.

۷	/iew/Modify Virtual Storage 🔹 🙎							
١	/irtual Disks	Storage Pools P	hysical Volumes	Optical/Tape				
Γ	To perform an action on a storage pool, first select the storage pool or storage pools, and then select the task.							
	Q D	Create Storage	Pool Extend	More Tasks	~			
	Select	Name ^	Total Size	More Tasks Reduce		Type		
		ams sp	273.25 GB	Assign as default storage	pool	volume based		
		datapool1	129.75 GB	Properties	Logical	volume based		
		datapool2	409.88 GB	409.88 GB	Logical	volume based		
		rootvg (Default)	136.5 GB	30.5 GB	Logical	volume based		

Figure 4-8 Assign as default storage pool option selection

5. A summary with the current and the next default storage pool opens, as shown in Figure 4-9. Click **OK** to validate the change. In this example, *datapool1* is the new default storage pool.



Figure 4-9 Assign as Default Storage Pool

#### Virtual disk/logical volume creation

Logical volumes belong to a storage pool and are also known as virtual disks. Logical volumes are used to provide disk space to LPARs but are not assigned to LPARs when you create them.

They can be created in several ways, depending on the menu that is in use:

- During LPAR creation: A logical volume is created in an existing storage pool and assigned to the partition.
- After or before LPAR creation: A virtual disk is not assigned to any partition and is created in an existing storage pool.

The following steps describe how to create a new logical volume:

- 1. Under the Virtual Storage Management menu in the navigation area, click View/Modify Virtual Storage.
- 2. Under the **Virtual Disks** tab in the work area, click **Create Virtual Disk** as shown in Figure 4-10.

View/Modify \	/iew/Modify Virtual Storage ?								
Virtual Disks	Virtual Disks Storage Pools Physical Volumes Optical/Tape								
To perform an	To perform an action on a virtual disk, first select the virtual disk or virtual disks, and then select the task.								
Select	Name ^	Storage Pool	Assigned Partition	Size					
	lp2vd1	rootvg		40 GB					
	lp5vd1	rootvg		40 GB					

Figure 4-10 Create virtual storage
3. A new window is displayed. Enter a name for the virtual disk, select a storage pool name from the drop-down list, as shown in Figure 4-11.

Create Virtual Disk	?					
To create a virtual disk, enter the virtual disk name, size and select a storage pool. If you wish to increase the available size of a storage pool, use the Extend task in the Storage Pool tab in the View/Modify Virtual Storage page. This action may take many minutes if you are creating a virtual disk in a file based storage pool.						
* Virtual disk name:	lpar3rootvg					
* Storage pool name:	datapool1 (129.75 GB Available) 💌					
* Virtual disk size:	ams_sp (273.25 GB Available) datapool1 (129.75 GB Available) datapool2 (409.88 GB Available)					
Assigned partition:	rootvg (30.5 GB Available)					
*Required field						
OK Cancel						

Figure 4-11 Create Virtual Disk: name and storage pool

 Enter the size of the virtual disk and select an assigned partition for the new disk from the drop-down list. Select **None** if you do not want to assign the new disk to a partition now. Click **OK** to create the virtual disk. as depicted in Figure 4-12.

Create Virtual Disk	?					
To create a virtual disk, enter the virtual disk name, size and select a storage pool. If you wish to increase the available size of a storage pool, use the Extend task in the Storage Pool tab in the View/Modify Virtual Storage page. This action may take many minutes if you are creating a virtual disk in a file based storage pool.						
* Virtual disk name:	Ipar3rootvg					
* Storage pool name:	datapool1 (129.75 GB Available) 🔽					
* Virtual disk size:	64 GB 💌					
Assigned partition:	lpar3_server1 (4) 🔽					
*Required field	None lpar1_server1 (2) lpar2_server1 (3)					
	lpar3_server1 (4)					
OK Cancel	· v					

Figure 4-12 Create Virtual Disk: size and partition assignment

To view and use your new virtual disk/logical volume, select the **View/Modify Virtual Storage** link under the Virtual Storage Management menu in the navigation area. The list of available virtual disks is displayed in the work area, under the Virtual Disks tab. Figure 4-13 shows an example.

View/Modify Virtual Storage							
Virtual Disks Storage Pools Physical Volumes Optical/Tape							
To perform a	n action on a virtual d	isk, first select the virtual disk or v	irtual disks, and then select the	task.			
Q D	😽 🛛 👫 Create Virt	ual Disk Modify partition assign	ment 🛛 More Tasks 💙				
Select	Name ^	Storage Pool	Assigned Partition	Size			
	lp2vd1	rootvg		40 GB			
	lp5vd1	rootvg		40 GB			
	Ipar3rootvq	datapool1 (Default)	lpar3_server1 (4)	64 GB			
	1						

Figure 4-13 View existing virtual disks

#### Virtual disk/logical volume partition assignment

There are different ways to assign virtual disks to an LPAR. You can assign an existing virtual disk by using the View/Modify Virtual Storage menu in the navigation area, or by managing partition properties, where you can assign virtual disks.

The following steps describe how to assign virtual disks by using the View/Modify Virtual Storage menu:

1. Under the Virtual Storage Management menu in the navigation area, click View/Modify Virtual Storage.

2. Under the Virtual Disks tab in the work area, select the virtual disk for which you want to change the assignment, as shown in Figure 4-14. You can select more than one virtual disk.

View/Modify	Virtual Storage			l.				
Virtual Disks Storage Pools Physical Volumes Optical/Tape								
To perform a	n action on a virtual d	isk, first select the virtual disk or v ual Disk Modify partition assign	irtual disks, and then select the ment More Tasks 💙	task.				
Select	Name ^	Storage Pool	Assigned Partition	Size				
	lp2vd1	rootvg		40 GB				
	lp5vd1	rootvg		40 GB				
	lpar3rootvq	datapool1 (Default)	lpar3_server1 (4)	64 GB				

Figure 4-14 Modifying the virtual disk partition assignment

3. Figure 4-15 shows the Modify Virtual Disk Partition Assignment window in the work area. A table shows the current assignment for the selected virtual disk and its current partition state. If the virtual disk is already assigned to another partition, ensure that this virtual disk is not being used.

ľ	lodify Virtua	al Disk Partition Assignme	ent	2			
Y b	You can assign the listed virtual disks to a different partition. You can also remove their current partition assignment by selecting None for the New Partition value.						
	<ul> <li>New partition</li> </ul>	on: 💌					
	Name	Current Assigned Partition	Current Partition State				
	lpar3rootvg	lpar3_server1 (4)	Running				
	Required fie	ld ]					

Figure 4-15 Current virtual disk assignment

4. Select the destination partition for the selected virtual disk by using the drop-down list of the **New partition** field, as shown in Figure 4-16. If you want to unassign the virtual disk from an LPAR, select **None**. Click **OK** to assign the virtual disk to the destination partition.

Modify Virtual Disk Partition Assignm	nent ?						
You can assign the listed virtual disks to a by selecting None for the New Partition va	You can assign the listed virtual disks to a different partition. You can also remove their current partition assignment by selecting None for the New Partition value.						
* New partition:  par2_server1 (3) V							
Name Cu None n	Current Partition State						
Ipar3rootvg Ipar1_server1 (2)	Running						
*Required field							
OK Cancel							

Figure 4-16 Destination partition selection

5. If the current assigned partition is in running state, a warning is issued, as depicted in Figure 4-17. Select Force device removal from running partitions. Ensure that the virtual disk is no longer being used by the current partition. Click OK to change the assignment of the virtual disk.

Modify Virtua	al Disk Partition Assignme	ent	2			
Problems occ details for eac A warr	urred while processing the d ch problem may be located r ning was generated requiring	ata. A summary of all pro next to the field causing t your attention before th	oblems for this page are listed below. Additional he problem. e requested task may be completed.			
You can assign by selecting No * New partition	n the listed virtual disks to a one for the New Partition val	different partition. You ca ue.	an also remove their current partition assignment			
Name	Current Assigned Partition	Current Partition State				
lpar3rootvg	lpar3_server1 (4)	Running				
* Required field						
One or more off the partitio and select OK	of the selected devices is cu on prior to removing assigne ( again. vice removal from running p	rrently assigned to a run d devices. If you would li artitions.	ning partition. It is recommended that you power ke to proceed anyway, select the checkbox below,			
OK Cancel						

Figure 4-17 Virtual disk assignment warning

**Removal of virtual disks:** Removing virtual disks that are being used by running partitions can cause data loss. Use caution when you remove virtual disks from a running partition. Ensure that the partition is no longer using the virtual disk before you force the removal of the virtual disk.

#### Virtual disk/logical volume deletion

To remove a virtual disk, it cannot be assigned to a partition. The following steps describe how to delete a virtual disk:

1. Under the Virtual Storage Management menu in the navigation area, click **View/Modify Virtual Storage**. See Figure 4-18 on page 61.

 Under the Virtual Disks tab in the work area, select the virtual disk for which you want to change the assignment, as shown in Figure 4-18. You can select more than one virtual disk. Select **Delete** from the More Tasks drop-down list. Click **OK** to continue. See Figure 4-18.

View/Modify Virtual Storage								
Virtual Disks	Virtual Disks Storage Pools Physical Volumes Optical/Tape							
To perform a	n action on a virtual d	isk, first select the virtual disk or v ual Disk Modify partition assign	irtual o	disks, and then select th	ne task.			
Select	Name ^	Storage Pool	Storage Pool					
	lp2vd1	rootvg		Delete	40 GB			
	lp5vd1	rootvg		Properties	40 GB			
	lpar3rootvq	datapool1 (Default)			64 GB			
Select	K Create Virt       Name ^       lp2vd1       lp5vd1       lpar3rootvg	ual Disk Modify partition assign Storage Pool rootvg rootvg datapool1 (Default)	ment	More Tasks V More Tasks Extend Delete Properties	<u>Size</u> 40 GB 40 GB 64 GB			

Figure 4-18 Virtual disk deletion

 Figure 4-19 shows the confirmation window that is displayed. Click OK to delete the virtual disk.

Delete Virtu	al Disks					
This task will destroy all data on the following virtual disks. To proceed, select OK.						
Name	Assigned Partition	Size				
lpar3rootvg		64 GB				
	21					

Figure 4-19 Virtual disk deletion confirmation

## 4.3 Active Memory Sharing

Active Memory Sharing (AMS) is an IBM PowerVM Enterprise Edition feature that enables advanced system memory virtualization capabilities for IBM Power Systems. With AMS, you can create a memory pool which can be shared between multiple partition, thus sharing physical memory.

To use the AMS feature, you need an existing storage pool with enough free space for AMS paging devices before you create the AMS pool. In IVM, the AMS paging devices are automatically managed. Although you can use any storage pool with enough free space, we suggest that you use a dedicated storage pool for the AMS paging devices, whenever possible.

After you create the AMS pool, you can manually add devices (physical or logical volumes), even if they do not belong to the paging storage pool. IVM automatically manages AMS paging devices. But you need to ensure that there are enough devices or free space in the paging storage pool to handle with the requirements of the LPAR.

See *IBM PowerVM Virtualization Active Memory Sharing*, REDP-4470 for more detailed information about AMS.

## 4.3.1 Creating the AMS pool

Before creating Active Memory Sharing (AMS) partitions, you must create a shared memory pool. This section describes the required steps to accomplish the creation of the AMS pool:

 Connect to the management interface of the IVM by using a web browser. After you log in, the window in Figure 4-20 opens. Click View/Modify Shared Memory Pool in the navigation area.

Integrated Virtualization Manager								111005	12	IBM.
Welcome padmin : vios1								Edit	my profile   H	elp   Log out
Partition Management	View/M	View/Modify Partitions 2								
<u>View/Modify Partitions</u> <u>View/Modify System Properties</u> <u>View/Modify Shared Memory Pool</u>	To perform an action on a partition, first select the partition or partitions, and then select the task. System Overview									
I/O Adapter Management	Total sv	stem m	emory:		128 GB	Tota	l processina	units:	16	
<u>View/Modify Host Ethernet</u> Adapters     View/Modify Virtual Ethernet View/Modify Physical Adapters     View Virtual Fibre Channel	Memory Reserve System Partitic	Total system memory:     128 GB     Total pro       Memory available:     108.5 GB     Processin       Reserved firmware memory:     1.5 GB     Processo       System attention LED:     Inactive			essor pool utilization:		14.2 0.19	(1.2%)		
Virtual Storage Management	D	6	* Create	Partition	Activat	e Shutdo	own Mor	e Tasks		✓
View/Modify Virtual Storage  IVM Management	Select	<u>ID</u> ^	Name	<u>State</u>	Uptime	Memory	Processors	Entitled Processing	Utilized Processing	Reference Code
View/Modify User Accounts     View/Modify TCP/IP Settings     Guided Setup     Enter PowerVM Edition Key		1	<u>vios1</u>	Running	4.84 Days	16 GB	16	Units	<u>Units</u> 0.18	
Service Management		2	Ipar1 server1	Running	Days	2 GB	2	0.2	0.01	
Electronic Service Agent     Service Focal Point     Manage Serviceable Events     Service Utilities     Create Serviceable Event     Manage Dumps     Collect VPD Information     Updates     Backup/Restore     Application Logs     Monitor Tasks     Hardware Inventory										

Figure 4-20 The IVM management interface

2. In the work area, the View/Modify System Properties window opens. Click **Define Shared Memory Pool**, as shown in Figure 4-21.

View/Modify System Properties
General Memory Processing
▼ General
Installed system memory: 128 GB (131072 MB)
Configurable system memory: 128 GB (131072 MB)
Current memory available: 101 GB (103424 MB)
Pending memory available: 101 GB (103424 MB)
Reserved firmware memory: 1.5 GB (1536 MB)
Memory Region Size
Memory region size: 256 MB
Memory region size after restart: 256 MB (automatic) 💌
Shared Memory Pool (Not defined)
A shared memory pool defines the amount of shared memory available on the system. Click <b>Define Shared</b> <b>Memory Pool</b> to specify properties for the shared memory pool, then click <b>Apply</b> to create the shared memory pool.
Define Shared Memory Pool
Apply Reset

Figure 4-21 Defining Shared Memory Pool

3. The window in Figure 4-22 opens. Enter the wanted amount of memory for the shared memory pool by using the Assigned memory for the Shared Memory Pool field.

View/Modify System Properties
General Memory Processing
▼ General
Installed system memory:128 GB (131072 MB)Configurable system memory:128 GB (131072 MB)Current memory available:101 GB (103424 MB)Pending memory available:101 GB (103424 MB)Reserved firmware memory:1.5 GB (1536 MB)
▼ Memory Region Size
Memory region size: 256 MB Memory region size after restart: 256 MB (automatic) 🗸
Shared Memory Pool (Not defined)
Define Shared Memory Pool
You cannot change the paging storage pool assigned to an existing shared memory pool. When you create a shared memory pool, ensure that the storage pool that you assign to the shared memory pool is large enough to support the needs of the shared memory pool and that the storage pool can be extended, if necessary, to support these needs.
<ul> <li>* Assigned memory: 65 Shared Memory Pool</li> <li>* Paging storage pool: rootvg (30.5 GB Available)</li> </ul>
* Required field
OK Cancel
Apply Reset

Figure 4-22 AMS pool size configuration

4. Choose the wanted storage pool for AMS paging devices by using the drop-down list of the Paging storage pool field, as shown in Figure 4-23. Remember that the wanted storage pool must be previously created before the AMS pool creation (see 4.2.3, "Storage pool disk management" on page 52 for more information about storage pools). Select GB from the drop-down list (MB is shown). Click **OK** to accept the options.

View/Modify System Properties
General Memory Processing
▼ General
Installed system memory: 128 GB (131072 MB)
Configurable system memory: 128 GB (131072 MB)
Current memory available: 101 GB (103424 MB)
Pending memory available: 101 GB (103424 MB)
Reserved Infinitivate methody. 1.5 GD (1556 MD)
Memory Region Size
Memory region size: 256 MB
Memory region size after restart: 256 MB (automatic) 💌
E Shaved Memory Deal (Net defined)
Define Shared Memory Pool
You cannot change the paging storage pool assigned to an existing shared memory pool. When
you create a shared memory pool, ensure that the storage pool that you assign to the shared
storage pool can be extended, if necessary, to support these needs.
* Assigned memory: 65
* Paging storage pool: ams_sp (273.25 GB Available)
ams_sp (273.25 GB Available)
* Required field datapool2 (409.88 GB Available)
rootvg (30.5 GB Available)
OK Cancel
Apply Reset
under lineare

Figure 4-23 Storage pool selection for AMS paging devices

5. You will see exclamation marks on the window, as shown in Figure 4-24. This view shows that the AMS pool configuration is still pending. Click **Apply** to make the AMS pool configuration effective.

View/Nedify Contem Properties
View/Houny System Properties
There are changes to system properties pending that require confirmation. Click <b>Apply</b> to enact these changes on the system.
General Memory Processing
▼ General
Installed system memory: 128 GB (131072 MB)
Configurable system memory: 128 GB (131072 MB)
Current memory available: 101 GB (103424 MB)
Pending memory available: 101 GB (103424 MB)
Reserved firmware memory: 1.5 GB (1536 MB)
▼ Memory Region Size
Memory region size: 256 MB
Memory region size after restart: 256 MB (automatic) 💌
Shared Memory Pool (Defined, but not created)
A shared memory pool defines the amount of shared memory available on the system. Click <b>Define Shared</b> <b>Memory Pool</b> to specify properties for the shared memory pool, then click <b>Apply</b> to create the shared memory pool.
Define Shared Memory Pool
Apply Reset

Figure 4-24 Applying AMS pool configuration

6. After applying the AMS Pool configuration, the View/Modify System Properties window shows the new configuration, as depicted in Figure 4-25.

View/Modify System Properties 2
General Memory Processing
The operation completed successfully.
▼ General
Installed system memory:128 GB (131072 MB)Configurable system memory:128 GB (131072 MB)Current memory available:39.75 GB (40704 MB)Pending memory available:39.75 GB (40704 MB)Reserved firmware memory:3.75 GB (3840 MB)
Memory Region Size
Memory region size: 256 MB Memory region size after restart: 256 MB (automatic) 💌
▼ Shared Memory Pool
A shared memory pool defines the amount of shared memory available on the system. Changes to the shared memory pool do not take effect until you click <b>Apply</b> .
Shared memory pool size:65 GB (64.75 GB Available)Reserved firmware memory:256 MBTotal assigned logical memory:0 MBPaging storage pool:ams_sp (273.25 GB Available)
Property Current Pending
Assigned memory 65 GB 65 GB 🖌
Maximum memory 65 GB 65 GB
Delete Shared Memory Pool
Paging Space Devices - Advanced
A paging space device is a block storage device that is dedicated to the shared memory pool. When assigned to a shared memory partition, the paging space device provides paging space for the partition, as needed. When you create or modify a shared memory partition, IVM creates and manages the required paging space device for the partition automatically. However, you can define a specific paging space device for the shared memory pool, such as a physical volume. IVM can then assign the paging space device to a partition when you create it, if the device meets the appropriate requirements.
Click Add to define a new paging space device for the shared memory pool, or select a device and click Remove.
Add Remove
Select         Name ^         Storage Pool         Assigned Partition         Partition State         Size
Apply Reset

Figure 4-25 The IVM memory configuration after AMS pool creation

## 4.3.2 Changing the AMS pool configuration

In the IVM, you can change the assigned memory and the maximum memory of the Active Memory Sharing (AMS) pool. Use the following steps to change these parameters:

- 1. Click **View/Modify Shared Memory Pool** in the navigation area, under the Partition Management menu.
- 2. Change the Assigned memory field to the wanted amount. Change the Maximum memory field to at least the same amount of the Assigned memory field. The maximum memory for the shared pool must be equal or greater than the assigned memory. See Figure 4-26.

General Memory General Installed system memo Configurable system m Current memory availa Pending memory availa Reserved firmware mer Memory Region Size Memory region size afte Shared Memory Po	Processing pry: 128 GB (131072 MB) temory: 128 GB (131072 MB) able: 33.75 GB (34560 MB) able: 33.75 GB (34560 MB) mory: 3.75 GB (3840 MB) ze 256 MB er restart: 256 MB (automatic) 💽
General Installed system memo Configurable system m Current memory availa Pending memory availa Reserved firmware mer Memory Region Size Memory region size: Memory region size afte Shared Memory Po	bry:       128 GB (131072 MB)         iemory:       128 GB (131072 MB)         able:       33.75 GB (34560 MB)         able:       33.75 GB (34560 MB)         mory:       3.75 GB (3840 MB)         ze       256 MB         er restart:       256 MB (automatic)
Installed system memo Configurable system m Current memory availa Pending memory availa Reserved firmware mer • Memory Region Size Memory region size afte • Shared Memory Po	apry:       128 GB (131072 MB)         hemory:       128 GB (131072 MB)         able:       33.75 GB (34560 MB)         able:       33.75 GB (34560 MB)         mory:       3.75 GB (3840 MB)         ze       256 MB         er restart:       256 MB (automatic) 💽
Memory region size: Memory region size afte Shared Memory Po	256 MB er restart: 256 MB (automatic) 💌
Memory region size after • Shared Memory Po	er restart: 256 MB (automatic) 💽
Shared Memory Po	
	ol
nemory pool do not tak Shared memory pool si Reserved firmware mer Fotal assigned logical m Paging storage pool:	ce effect until you click <b>Apply</b> . ize: 65 GB (64.75 GB Available) mory: 256 MB nemory: 0 MB ams_sp (273.25 GB Available)
Property C	urrent Pending
Assigned memory 65	5 GB 90 GB 😪 🛶 New shared memory
Maximum memory 65	5 GB 90 GB 💌
■ Paging Space De ■ Paging Space De A paging space devic assigned to a shared as needed. When you required paging space space device for the space device to a pa Click Add to define a	v Pool evices - Advanced ce is a block storage device that is dedicated to the shared memory pool. When I memory partition, the paging space device provides paging space for the partition, u create or modify a shared memory partition, IVM creates and manages the ce device for the partition automatically. However, you can define a specific paging shared memory pool, such as a physical volume. IVM can then assign the paging intition when you create it, if the device meets the appropriate requirements.
Remove.	Their paging space device for the shared memory poor, or select a device and elick
Add Remove	e
Select <u>Name</u>	Assigned Partition Partition State Size
pply Reset	

Figure 4-26 Changing the shared memory pool size

3. Click **Apply** to change the AMS pool size.

## 4.3.3 Removing the AMS pool

To remove the Active Memory Sharing (AMS) pool, you cannot have logical partitions using the shared memory pool. Ensure that you change all of your LPARs from the shared memory mode to the dedicated memory mode before you remove the ASM pool, otherwise the removal fails.

The following steps describe how to remove the AMS pool.

- 1. Click **View/Modify Shared Memory Pool** in the navigation area, under the Partition Management menu.
- 2. Click Delete Shared Memory Pool to remove the AMS pool, as shown in Figure 4-27.

View/Modify Syster	n Propert	ies	2			
General Memory	y Pro	cessing				
▼ General						
Installed system memory:128 GB (131072 MB)Configurable system memory:128 GB (131072 MB)Current memory available:9 GB (9216 MB)Pending memory available:9 GB (9216 MB)Reserved firmware memory:4.5 GB (4608 MB)						
<ul> <li>Memory Region</li> </ul>	Size					
Memory region size: Memory region size	after resta	256 MB rt: 256 MB (automatic				
A shared memory po memory pool do not	pool ool defines take effect	the amount of shared t until you click <b>Apply</b> .	memory available on the system. Changes to the shared			
Shared memory poo Reserved firmware r Total assigned logica Paging storage pool:	ol size: memory: al memory :	90 GB (89.67 GB Ava 263 MB : 1 GB ams_sp (272.25 GB A	ilable) Available)			
Property	Current	Pending				
Assigned memory	90 GB	90 GB 💙				
Maximum memory	90 GB	90 GB 💌				
Delete Shared Mem	ory Pool ed Memory P • Devices	ool - Advanced				
Apply Reset						

Figure 4-27 Shared memory pool deletion

3. A confirmation window opens, as depicted in Figure 4-28. Click **OK** to continue.

View/Modify System Properties	?
General Memory Processing	
▼ General	
Installed system memory: 128 GB (131072 MB)	
Configurable system memory: 128 GB (131072 MB)	
Current memory available: 8 GB (8192 MB)	
Pending memory available: 8 GB (8192 MB)	
Reserved firmware memory: 4.5 GB (4608 MB)	
Memory Region Size	
Memory region size: 256 MB	
Memory region size after restart: 256 MB (automatic) 💟	
▼ Shared Memory Pool	
Delete Shared Memory Pool	
Deleting the shared memory pool will prevent creating or activating partitions with shared	
memory. Click OK to continue.	
OK Cancel	
Shared Memory Pool	
Apply Reset	

Figure 4-28 Shared memory pool deletion warning

4. The shared pool deletion is still pending, as shown in Figure 4-29. Click **Apply** to change and remove the AMS pool.

View/Modify System Properties
There are changes to system properties pending that require confirmation. Click <b>Apply</b> to enact these changes on the system.
General Bemory Processing
▼ General
Installed system memory: 128 GB (131072 MB)
Configurable system memory: 128 GB (131072 MB)
Current memory available: 8 GB (8192 MB)
Pending memory available: 8 GB (8192 MB)
Reserved firmware memory: 4.5 GB (4608 MB)
Memory Region Size
Memory region size: 256 MB
Memory region size after restart: 256 MB (automatic) 💌
Shared Memory Pool (Delete pending)
A shared memory pool defines the amount of shared memory available on the system. Changes to the shared memory pool do not take effect until you click <b>Apply</b> .
Apply Reset

Figure 4-29 Applying shared memory pool deletion

## 4.3.4 Adding or removing specific paging devices to shared memory pool

The IVM manages shared memory paging devices automatically, by creating and extending paging space devices in the paging storage pool, as needed. But you can also add specific paging devices to the shared memory pool, even if they do not belong to the paging storage pool. You can even add physical volumes as paging space devices. IVM automatically assigns these paging space devices according to the requirements of the LPAR.

#### Adding specific paging devices

To add specific paging devices to the shared memory pool, follow these steps:

- 1. Click **View/Modify Shared Memory Pool** in the navigation area, under the Partition Management menu.
- 2. In the work area, expand the Paging Space Devices Advanced menu. Click **Add** to assign more devices to the shared memory pool (Figure 4-30).

Seneral       Nemory       Processing <ul> <li>General</li> <li>Installed system memory:</li> <li>128 GB (131072 MB)</li> <li>Configurable system memory:</li> <li>128 GB (131072 MB)</li> <li>Current memory available:</li> <li>34.75 GB (3584 MB)</li> <li>Pending memory available:</li> <li>34.75 GB (3584 MB)</li> <li>Reserved firmware memory:</li> <li>3.75 GB (3840 MB)</li> <li> </li> <li> <li> <li> <li> <li> <li> </li> <li> <li> <li> <li> </li> <li> <li> </li> <li> <li> <li> </li> <li> </li> <li> <li> </li> <li> </li> <li> <li> </li> <li> <li> </li> <li> </li> <li> <li> </li> <li> <li> </li> <li> <li> </li> <li> </li> <li> <li> </li> <li> </li> <li> <li> </li> <li> </li> <li> </li> <li> </li> <li> </li> <li> <li> </li> <li> <li> </li> <li> </li> <li> <li> </li> <li> </li> <li> </li> <li> <li> </li> <li> <th colspan="7">ïew/Modify System Properties</th></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></li></ul>	ïew/Modify System Properties							
• General         Installed system memory:       128 GB (131072 MB)         Configurable system memory:       128 GB (131072 MB)         Current memory available:       34.75 GB (35584 MB)         Reserved firmware memory:       3.75 GB (35584 MB)         Reserved firmware memory:       3.75 GB (35584 MB)         * Memory region size:       256 MB         * Shared Memory Pool       *         A shared memory pool defines the amount of shared memory available on the system. Changes to the shared memory pool size:       25 GB (64.67 GB Available)         Reserved firmware memory:       263 MB         Total assigned logical memory:       1 GB         Paging storage pool:       ams_sp (272.25 GB Available)         Reserved firmware memory:       263 MB         Total assigned logical memory:       1 GB         Paging storage pool:       ams_sp (272.25 GB Available)         Resigned memory 65 GB       65         Ø B       Ø         Maximum memory       65 GB         Ø B       Ø         Paging space device is a block storage device that is dedicated to the shared memory pool. When assigned to a shared memory partition, the paging space device provides paging space for the partition, as needed. When you create or modify a shared memory partition, IVM creates and manages the required paging space device for the partition automatically. However, y	General Me	emory P	rocessing					
Installed system memory: 128 GB (131072 MB) Configurable system memory: 128 GB (131072 MB) Current memory available: 34.75 GB (35584 MB) Reserved firmware memory: 3.75 GB (35584 MB) Reserved firmware memory: 3.75 GB (35584 MB) Reserved firmware memory: 3.75 GB (3840 MB) <b>r Memory Region Size</b> Memory region size: 256 MB Wemory region size after restart: 256 MB (automatic) ♥ <b>r Shared Memory Pool</b> shared memory pool defines the amount of shared memory available on the system. Changes to the shared memory pool do not take effect until you click <b>Apply</b> . Shared memory pool defines the amount of shared memory available on the system. Changes to the shared memory pool do not take effect until you click <b>Apply</b> . Shared memory pool defines the amount of shared memory available on the system. Changes to the shared Reserved firmware memory: 263 MB Total assigned logical memory: 1 GB Paging storage pool: ams_sp (272.25 GB Available) Reserved firmware memory 65 GB <u>65</u> <u>GB</u> Maximum memory <u>65 GB</u> <u>65</u> <u>GB</u> Maximum memory <u>65 GB</u> <u>65</u> <u>GB</u> <b>Delete Shared Memory Pool</b> <b>Property</b> <u>Current</u> <u>Pending</u> Assigned to a shared memory partition, the paging space device is a block storage device that is dedicated to the shared memory pool. When assigned to a shared memory pool, such as a physical volume. I/M can then assign the paging space device for the shared memory partition, I/M creates and manages the required paging space device for the shared memory partition, I/M creates and manages the required paging space device for the shared memory pool, such as a physical volume. I/M can then assign the paging space device for the shared memory partition, I/M creates and manages the required paging space device for the shared memory pool, or select a device and click Remove. Add. <u>Remove</u> <u>Select</u> <u>Name</u> <u>Storage Pool</u> <u>Assigned Partition</u> <u>Partition State</u> <u>Size</u> <u>Name</u> <u>Storage Pool</u> <u>Assigned Partition</u> <u>Natoriate</u> <u>Size</u> <u>Select</u> <u>Name</u> <u>Storage Pool</u> <u>Assigned Partition</u> <u>Natoriate</u> <u>Size</u> <u>Sel</u>	General							
Memory Region Size       256 MB         Memory region size:       256 MB (automatic) ▼         Y Shared Memory Pool       ▼         Ashared memory pool defines the amount of shared memory available on the system. Changes to the shared memory pool do not take effect until you click Apply.         Shared memory pool size:       65 GB (64.67 GB Available)         Reserved firmware memory:       263 MB         Total assigned logical memory:       1 GB         Paging storage pool:       ams_sp (272.25 GB Available)         Property       Current       Pending         Assigned memory 65 GB       65       GB ▼         Maximum memory       65 GB       65       GB ▼         Delete Shared Memory Pool            V Paging Space Devices - Advanced        Apaging space device is a block storage device that is dedicated to the shared memory pool. When assigned to a shared memory pool, when assigned to a shared memory pool, when as a physicic for the shared memory pool, When assigned to a shared memory pool, when as a physicic for the shared memory pool, when as a physicic for the shared memory pool, when as a physicic for the shared memory pool, when as a physicic for the shared memory pool, when as a physicic for the shared memory pool, when as a physicic for the shared memory pool, when as a physicic for the shared memory pool, when as a physicic for the shared memory pool, when as a physicic for the shared memory pool, when as a physicic for the shared memory pool, when as a physicic for the sh	installed syste Configurable s Current memo Pending memo Reserved firmy	m memory: ystem memor ry available: ry available: vare memory	128 GB (131072 M y: 128 GB (131072 M 34.75 GB (35584 N 34.75 GB (35584 N 3.75 GB (3840 MB)	B) B) 1B) 1B)				
Memory region size:       256 MB         Memory region size after restart:       256 MB (automatic) ▼         P Shared Memory Pool       Image: Stare of the amount of shared memory available on the system. Changes to the share memory pool do not take effect until you click Apply.         Shared memory pool size:       65 GB (64.67 GB Available)         Reserved firmware memory:       263 MB         Total assigned logical memory:       1 GB         Paging storage pool:       ams_sp (272.25 GB Available)         Property       Current         Pending         Assigned memory       65 GB         ØS       ØS         Maximum memory       65 GB         ØS       ØS         Paging Space device is a block storage device that is dedicated to the shared memory pool. When assigned to a shared memory pool, such as a physica volume. IVM can then assign the paging space device for the shared memory pool, such a	Memory Re	gion Size						
a shared memory pool defines the amount of shared memory available on the system. Changes to the shared nemory pool do not take effect until you click Apply.         Shared memory pool size:       65 GB (64.67 GB Available)         Reserved firmware memory:       263 MB         Total assigned logical memory:       1 GB         Paging storage pool:       ams_sp (272.25 GB Available)         Reserved firmware memory       65 GB 65 GB ×         Maximum memory       65 GB 65 GB ×         Maximum memory       65 GB 65 GB ×         Delete Shared Memory Pool <b>Paging Space Devices - Advanced</b> A paging space device is a block storage device that is dedicated to the shared memory pool. When assigned to a shared memory partition, the paging space device provides paging space for the partition, as needed. When you create or modify a shared memory partition, IVM creates and manages the required paging space device for the partition automatically. However, you can define a specific paging space device to a partition when you create it, if the device meets the appropriate requirements.         Click Add to define a new paging space device for the shared memory pool, or select a device and click Remove.         Add.       Remove         Select       Name ^       Storage Pool       Assigned Partition       Partition State       Size         I v00       ams_sp       Ipar3_server1 (4)       Not Activated       1 GB	Memory region Memory region Shared Mer	size: size after res nory Pool	256 MB start: 256 MB (autom	atic) 💙				
hemory pool do not take effect until you click Apply.         Shared memory pool size:       65 GB (64.67 GB Available)         Reserved firmware memory:       263 MB         Total assigned logical memory:       1 GB         Paging storage pool:       ams_sp (272.25 GB Available)         Assigned memory       65 GB         Maximum memory       65 GB         Maximum memory       65 GB         Delete Shared Memory Pool         Paging space device is a block storage device that is dedicated to the shared memory pool. When assigned to a shared memory partition, the paging space device provides paging space for the partition, as needed. When you create or modify a shared memory providention, IVM creates and manages the required paging space device for the partition automatically. However, you can define a specific paging space device for the shared memory pool, such as a physical volume. IVM can then assign the paging space device for the shared memory pool, such as a physical volume. IVM can then assign the paging space device to a partition when you create it, if the device meets the appropriate requirements.         Click Add to define a new paging space device for the shared memory pool, or select a device and click Remove.         Add.       Remove         Select       Name        Storage Pool       Assigned Partition       Partition State       Size         I v00       ams_sp       lpar3_server1 (4)       Not Activated       1 GB	shared memo	bry pool define	es the amount of shar	ed memory available on t	he system. Changes to	the shared		
Property       Current       Pending         Assigned memory       65 GB       65       GB         Maximum memory       65 GB       65       GB         Delete Shared Memory Pool <b>* Paging Space Devices - Advanced</b> A paging space device is a block storage device that is dedicated to the shared memory pool. When assigned to a shared memory partition, the paging space device provides paging space for the partition, as needed. When you create or modify a shared memory partition, IVM creates and manages the required paging space device for the partition automatically. However, you can define a specific paging space device for the shared memory pool, such as a physical volume. IVM can then assign the paging space device to a partition when you create it, if the device meets the appropriate requirements.         Click Add to define a new paging space device for the shared memory pool, or select a device and click Remove.         Add       Remove         Select       Name ^       Storage Pool       Assigned Partition       Partition State       Size         O       Iv00       ams_sp       Ipar3_server1 (4)       Not Activated       1 GB	Shared memor Reserved firm Fotal assigned Paging storage	y pool size: vare memory logical memo pool:	65 GB (64.67 GB 263 MB ry: 1 GB ams_sp (272.25 G	Available) GB Available)				
Assigned memory       65 GB       65       GB       Image: Control of the start o	Property Current Pending							
Maximum memory       65 GB       65       GB         Delete Shared Memory Pool <ul> <li>Paging Space Devices - Advanced</li> <li>A paging space device is a block storage device that is dedicated to the shared memory pool. When assigned to a shared memory partition, the paging space device provides paging space for the partition, as needed. When you create or modify a shared memory partition, IVM creates and manages the required paging space device for the partition automatically. However, you can define a specific paging space device to a partition when you create it, if the device meets the appropriate requirements.         Click Add to define a new paging space device for the shared memory pool, or select a device and click Remove.                <u>Add</u> <u>Remove</u>          Select       Name ^ Storage Pool       Assigned Partition       Partition State       Size         I v00       ams_sp       Ipar3_server1 (4)       Not Activated       1 GB</li></ul>	Assigned memory 65 GB 65 GB V							
Delete Shared Memory Pool <ul> <li>Paging Space Devices - Advanced</li> </ul> A paging space device is a block storage device that is dedicated to the shared memory pool. When assigned to a shared memory partition, the paging space device provides paging space for the partition, as needed. When you create or modify a shared memory partition, IVM creates and manages the required paging space device for the partition automatically. However, you can define a specific paging space device for the shared memory pool, such as a physical volume. IVM can then assign the paging space device to a partition when you create it, if the device meets the appropriate requirements.         Click Add to define a new paging space device for the shared memory pool, or select a device and click Remove.         Add       Remove         Select       Name ^       Storage Pool       Assigned Partition       Partition State       Size         O       Iv00       ams_sp       Ipar3_server1 (4)       Not Activated       1 GB	Maximum memory 65 GB 65 GB V							
▼ Paging Space Devices - Advanced         A paging space device is a block storage device that is dedicated to the shared memory pool. When assigned to a shared memory partition, the paging space device provides paging space for the partition, as needed. When you create or modify a shared memory partition, IVM creates and manages the required paging space device for the partition automatically. However, you can define a specific paging space device to a partition when you create it, if the device meets the appropriate requirements.         Click Add to define a new paging space device for the shared memory pool, or select a device and click Remove.         Add       Remove         Select       Name ^ Storage Pool       Assigned Partition       Partition State       Size         O       Iv00       ams_sp       Ipar3_server1 (4)       Not Activated       1 GB	Delete Shared	Memory Pool	]					
A paging space device is a block storage device that is dedicated to the shared memory pool. When assigned to a shared memory partition, the paging space device provides paging space for the partition, as needed. When you create or modify a shared memory partition, IVM creates and manages the required paging space device for the partition automatically. However, you can define a specific paging space device for the shared memory pool, such as a physical volume. IVM can then assign the paging space device to a partition when you create it, if the device meets the appropriate requirements.         Click Add to define a new paging space device for the shared memory pool, or select a device and click Remove.         Add       Remove         Select       Name ^       Storage Pool       Assigned Partition       Partition State       Size         Iv00       ams_sp       Ipar3_server1 (4)       Not Activated       1 GB	Paging S	pace Device	s - Advanced					
Add       Remove         Select       Name ^       Storage Pool       Assigned Partition       Partition State       Size         O       Iv00       ams_sp       Ipar3_server1 (4)       Not Activated       1 GB	A paging spi assigned to as needed. I required pag space device space device Click Add to Remove.	ace device is a a shared men When you crea jing space dev e for the share e to a partition define a new	a block storage device nory partition, the pag- ate or modify a share vice for the partition a ed memory pool, such a when you create it, paging space device	e that is dedicated to the s ging space device provides d memory partition, IVM o sutomatically. However, yo n as a physical volume. IV if the device meets the ap for the shared memory po	hared memory pool. W paging space for the p reates and manages th u can define a specific M can then assign the p propriate requirements ol, or select a device a	/hen bartition, re paging baging a. nd click		
Select         Name ^         Storage Pool         Assigned Partition         Partition State         Size           O         lv00         ams_sp         lpar3_server1 (4)         Not Activated         1 GB	AddN	Remove						
Iv00     ams_sp     Ipar3_server1 (4)     Not Activated     1 GB	Select	Name ^	Storage Pool	Assigned Partition	Partition State	Size		
	0	lv00	ams_sp	lpar3_server1 (4)	Not Activated	1 GB		
	Rese	•						

3. A new window with a list of paging device candidates opens under the Shared Memory Pool menu in the work area, as shown in Figure 4-31. Select the wanted device to add as a paging space device and click **OK**.

Add P	aging Space						
Select the physical volume or logical volume that you want to use as a paging space.							
Note: You cannot use a physical or logical volume that serves as a paging space for any other purpose.							
Select	Device Name	Туре	Storage Pool	Size			
$\circ$	lp2vd1	Logical volume	rootvg	40 GB			
0	lpar3rootvg	Logical volume	datapool1	64 GB			
0	lp5vd1	Logical volume	rootvg	40 GB			
0	hdisk11	Physical volume		10 GB			
۲	hdisk7	Physical volume		136.73 GB			
	Lancel						

Figure 4-31 Paging space device selection

4. You will see exclamation marks in the Paging Space Devices - Advanced menu. This view means that the configuration is still pending, as depicted in Figure 4-32. Click **Apply** to make the changes.

There are changes to system properties pending that require confirmation. Click Apply to enact these change on the system. Seneral Memory Processing							
General       Memory       Processing         General       Installed system memory:       128 GB (131072 MB)         Configurable system memory:       128 GB (131072 MB)         Current memory available:       34.5 GB (35328 MB)							
▼ General Installed system memory: 128 GB (131072 MB) Configurable system memory: 128 GB (131072 MB) Current memory available: 34.5 GB (35328 MB)							
Installed system memory: 128 GB (131072 MB) Configurable system memory: 128 GB (131072 MB) Current memory available: 34.5 GB (35328 MB)							
Installed system memory:128 GB (131072 MB)Configurable system memory:128 GB (131072 MB)Current memory available:34.5 GB (35328 MB)Pending memory available:34.5 GB (35328 MB)Reserved firmware memory:4 GB (4096 MB)							
Memory Region Size							
Memory region size: 256 MB Memory region size after restart: 256 MB (automatic) 💌							
Shared Memory Pool							
A shared memory pool defines the amount of shared memory available on the system. Changes to the shared nemory pool do not take effect until you click <b>Apply</b> .							
Shared memory pool size:65 GB (64.67 GB Available)Reserved firmware memory:263 MBTotal assigned logical memory:5 GBPaging storage pool:ams_sp (257.25 GB Available)							
Property Current Pending							
Assigned memory 65 GB 65 GB V							
Maximum memory 65 GB 65 GB V							
Delete Shared Memory Pool							
Paging Space Devices - Advanced (Table changes pending)							
A paging space device is a block storage device that is dedicated to the shared memory pool. When assigned to a shared memory partition, the paging space device provides paging space for the partition, as needed. When you create or modify a shared memory partition, IVM creates and manages the required paging space device for the partition automatically. However, you can define a specific paging space device for the shared memory pool, such as a physical volume. IVM can then assign the paging space device to a partition when you create it, if the device meets the appropriate requirements.							
Remove.							
Add Remove							
Select Name A Storage Pool Assigned Partition Partition State Size							
V IV01 ams_sp Ipar3_server1 (4) Running 16 GB							
O hdisk7 Not Available 136.73 GB							
pply Reset							

Figure 4-32 Adding paging space devices

## Removing specific paging devices

To remove a specific paging device, it cannot be assigned to a logical partition. Ensure that the paging space device is not assigned to any LPAR before removing. Follow these steps to remove from the shared memory pool:

1. Click **View/Modify Shared Memory Pool** in the navigation area, under the Partition Management menu.

2. In the work area, expand the Paging Space Devices - Advanced menu. Select the wanted paging device that you want to remove. Ensure that the device is not assigned to any partition. Click **Remove** to remove the device from the shared memory pool, as shown in Figure 4-33.

n memory: stem memory y available: y available: y available: are memory gion Size size: size after re size after re ory Pool y pool defir not take ef	128 GB (13107 ry: 128 GB (13107 30.75 GB (3144 30.75 GB (3144 ;: 4.25 GB (4352 256 MB start: 256 MB (au	2 MB) 2 MB) 38 MB) 38 MB) MB) tomatic) V					
n memory: stem memo y available: y available: are memory gion Size size: size after re size after re ory Pool ory Pool	128 GB (13107 ry: 128 GB (13107 30.75 GB (3144 30.75 GB (3144 4.25 GB (4352 256 MB start: 256 MB (au	2 MB) 2 MB) 38 MB) 38 MB) MB) tomatic) 💌					
n memory: stem memo y available: y available: are memory gion Size size: size after re size after re ory Pool y pool defir not take ef	128 GB (13107 ry: 128 GB (13107 30.75 GB (3144 30.75 GB (3144 ': 4.25 GB (4352 256 MB start: 256 MB (au	2 MB) 2 MB) 38 MB) 38 MB) MB) tomatic) V					
gion Size size: size after re ory Pool ry pool defir not take ef	256 MB start: 256 MB (au les the amount of s	tomatic) 💌					
size: size after re o <b>ry Pool</b> ry pool defir not take ef	256 MB start: 256 MB (au es the amount of s	tomatic) 🔽					
ry pool defir not take ef	es the amount of s						
ry pool defir not take ef	es the amount of s						
y pool size: are memory ogical memo pool:	65 GB (64.67 263 MB ory: 5 GB ams_sp (257.2	GB Available) 25 GB Available)					
Curre	nt Pending						
Assigned memory 65 GB 65 GB V							
Maximum memory 65 GB 65 GB V							
▼ Paging Space Devices - Advanced A paging space device is a block storage device that is dedicated to the shared memory pool. When assigned to a shared memory partition, the paging space device provides paging space for the partition, as needed. When you create or modify a shared memory partition, IVM creates and manages the required paging space device for the partition automatically. However, you can define a specific paging space device to a partition when you create it, if the device meets the appropriate requirements. Click Add to define a new paging space device for the shared memory pool, or select a device and click Remove.							
Add Remove							
Name 📈	Storage Pool	Assigned Partition	Partition State	Size			
disk7			Not Available	136.73 GB			
/01	ams_sp	lpar3_server1 (4)	Running	16 GB			
	are memory ogical memory pool: Curren ory 65 GB Memory 65 GB Memory Pool pace Device ce device is i shared men /hen you cree ing space de for the shar to a partitio define a new Remove Name Vol	are memory: 263 MB ogical memory: 5 GB pool: ams_sp (257.2 Current Pending ory 65 GB 65 G nory 65 GB 65 G Memory Pool pace Devices - Advanced ce device is a block storage de i shared memory partition, the /hen you create or modify a sh ing space device for the partition for the shared memory pool, s to a partition when you created define a new paging space device Remove Name Storage Pool disk7 v01 ams_sp	are memory: 263 MB ogical memory: 5 GB pool: ams_sp (257.25 GB Available) Current Pending ory 65 GB 65 GB ✓ hory 65 GB 65 GB ✓ Memory Pool pace Devices - Advanced ce device is a block storage device that is dedicated to a shared memory partition, the paging space device pro /hen you create or modify a shared memory partition, J ing space device for the partition automatically. However for the shared memory pool, such as a physical volum to a partition when you create it, if the device meets the define a new paging space device for the shared memory Remove Name Storage Pool Assigned Partition disk7 J v01 ams_sp Ipar3_server1 (4)	are memory: 263 MB ogical memory: 5 GB pool: ams_sp (257.25 GB Available) Current Pending ory 65 GB 65 GB ✓ hory 65 GB 65 GB ✓ Memory Pool pace Devices - Advanced ce device is a block storage device that is dedicated to the shared memory p is hared memory partition, the paging space device provides paging space fo then you create or modify a shared memory partition, IVM creates and mana ing space device for the partition automatically. However, you can define a sig for the shared memory pool, such as a physical volume. IVM can then assig to a partition when you create it, if the device meets the appropriate require define a new paging space device for the shared memory pool, or select a de Remove Name Storage Pool Assigned Partition Partition State disk7 Not Available v01 ams_sp Ipar3_server1 (4) Running			

Integrated Virtualization Manager for IBM Power Systems Servers

76

3. A confirmation window is displayed, as shown in Figure 4-34. Click **Ok** to confirm.



Figure 4-34 Paging space device removal confirmation

4. You will see exclamation marks in the Paging Space Devices - Advanced menu. This view means that the configuration is still pending, as depicted in Figure 4-35. Click **Apply** to make the changes.

/iew/Modify S	ystem Prope	erties			1			
<ul> <li>There are ch on the system</li> </ul>	anges to syst m.	em properties pendi	ng that require confirmation	n. Click <b>Apply</b> to enac	t these changes			
General 🛛 🔳	Memory	Processing						
▼ General								
Installed system Configurable sy Current memo Pending memo Reserved firmy	m memory: ystem memor ry available: ry available: vare memory	128 GB (131072) y: 128 GB (131072) 30.75 GB (31488) 30.75 GB (31488) 30.75 GB (31488) : 4.25 GB (4352 Mi	MB) MB) MB) 3)					
• Memory Re	gion Size							
Memory region Memory region	size: size after res	256 MB start: 256 MB (autor	matic) 🔽					
• Shared M	lemory Pool							
A shared memory pool d	ory pool define o not take eff	es the amount of sha ect until you click <b>Ap</b>	ared memory available on t	he system. Changes t	o the shared			
Shared memor Reserved firmv Total assigned Paging storage	y pool size: vare memory logical memo pool:	65 GB (64.67 GE : 263 MB ry: 5 GB ams_sp (257.25	GB Available)					
Property	Property Current Pending							
Assigned memory 65 GB 65 GB 9								
Maximum memory 65 GB 65 GB V								
Delete Shared	Memory Poo	1						
🔻 🖪 Paging	g Space Dev	⊐ ices - Advanced(1	able changes pending)					
A paging spa assigned to as needed. V required pag space device	ace device is a a shared men When you cre jing space device for the share to a partition	a block storage devi nory partition, the pa- ate or modify a shar vice for the partition ed memory pool, suu n when you create it,	the that is dedicated to the s ging space device provides ed memory partition, IVM of automatically. However, yo thas a physical volume. IV if the device meets the ap	hared memory pool. V s paging space for the creates and manages t u can define a specifi M can then assign the propriate requirement	When partition, the c paging paging s.			
Remove.								
Add	Remove	Stores Deal	Accienced Destition	Dartitica Otata	Size			
Select	Name ^	Storage Pool	Assigned Partition	Partition State	<u>Size</u>			
0	1001	ams_sp	ipar3_server1 (4)	Kunning	16 GB			
Apple N								
Rese	L							

Figure 4-35 Removing paging space devices from the shared memory pool

# 4.4 Create logical partitions

A *logical partition* (*LPAR*) is a set of resources: Processors, memory, and I/O devices. Each resource that is assigned to an LPAR is allocated, regardless of whether the LPAR is running or not.

The following steps describe how to create an LPAR:

- 1. Under the Partition Management menu in the navigation area, click **Create Partition** in the work area.
- 2. The Create Partition wizard window opens. Type a name for the new partition, as shown in Figure 4-36. Click **Next**.

<b>Create Partition: Name</b>		Step 1 of 11
Create Partition: Name Memory Processors Ethernet Storage Type Storage Virtual Fibre Channel Optical/Tape Physical Adapters Summary	Name To create a partition complete the following information. System name: 8233-E8B_SN061AA6P Partition ID: 5 * Partition name: lpar4_server1 Environment: AIX or Linux v	Step 1 of 11
	*Required field	
< Back Next Finish	Cancel	Help

Figure 4-36 Create Partition: Name

3. Select the memory mode for the new partition. Figure 4-37 shows the window for the shared memory mode. Figure 4-38 shows the window for the dedicated memory mode. Enter the amount of memory needed. Click **Next**.



Figure 4-37 Create Partition: Assign memory for the shared memory mode

<b>Create Partition: Memo</b>	ry Step 2 of 1
Name Memory Processors Ethernet Storage Type Storage Virtual Fibre Channel Optical/Tape Physical Adapters Summary	Memory         In dedicated mode, the partition uses assigned memory from total system memory. In shared mode, the partition uses assigned memory from the system shared memory pool. Select the memory mode for the partition, then specify the amount of memory, in multiples of 256 MB, to assign for the partition.         Note: If you specify a number that is not a multiple of 256 MB, the wizard will round the number to the nearest multiple of 256 MB.         Memory Mode
	Dedicated     Shared     Dedicated Mode
	Total system memory: 128 GB (131072 MB) Current memory available for partition usage: 33.25 GB (34048 MB) Assigned memory: 4
< Back Next Finish	Cancel

Figure 4-38 Create Partition: Assign memory for the dedicated memory mode

4. Select the number of processors that are needed and choose a processing mode, as shown in Figure 4-39. If you choose the shared memory mode, you cannot use dedicated processors. In the shared processor mode, each virtual processor uses 0.1 processing units at the time of LPAR creation. Click **Next**.



Figure 4-39 Create Partition: Processors (and Processing Mode)

5. Each partition has two virtual Ethernet adapters that can be configured to one of the four available virtual Ethernet connections. In Figure 4-40, adapter 1 uses virtual Ethernet ID 1. If your system has a Host Ethernet Adapter (HEA), the HEA ports section opens. If you want to use a virtual port from an HEA, check the wanted HEA port check box.

Create Partition: Ether <u>Name</u> <u>Memory</u> <u>Processors</u> <u>** Ethernet</u> Storage Type	Etherno Specify Ethernel does no	et the des t adapte t requir	ired Host E er. Virtual E e a bridge,	thernet Adapter ports and specify ithernet requires a bridge to acce but it does not support mobility.	r virtual Ethernets ss the external ne	s for each virtual stwork. Host Ethernet					
Storage Virtual Fibre Channel	Host El	ist Ethernet Adapter Ports									
Physical Adapters Summary	Select	Type	Link State	Physical Location Code *	MAC Address	<u>Available</u> <u>Connections</u>					
	✓	1 G	Up	U78A0.001.DNWHZWR-P1-C6- T1	00215EAA7962	14					
		1 G	Down	U78A0.001.DNWHZWR-P1-C6- T2	00215EAA7963	14					
		1 G	Down	U78A0.001.DNWHZWR-P1-C6- T3	00215EAA7972	14					
		1 G	Down	U78A0.001.DNWHZWR-P1-C6- T4	00215EAA7973	14					
	Virtual Create	Ether Adapte	net Config er	uration							
	Ada	apter 1	,	Virtual Ethernet							
		2		None Y							
Back Next Finish	Cancel					Hel					

Figure 4-40 Create Partition: Virtual Ethernet and Host Ethernet Adapter

6. Select Assign existing virtual disks and physical volumes, as shown in Figure 4-41.

You can also allow the IVM to create a virtual disk for you by selecting **Create virtual disk**, but be aware that the virtual disk is created in the default storage pool. To create a storage pool and virtual disk, or to change the default storage pool, refer to 4.2.3, "Storage pool disk management" on page 52. Click **Next**.



Figure 4-41 Create Partition: Storage Type

7. Select the needed virtual disks or physical volumes from the list, as shown in Figure 4-42. Click **Next**.

Create Partition: Storag	ge					Step 6 of 11			
<u>Name</u> <u>Memory</u> <u>Processors</u> <u>Ethernet</u> Storage Type	Storage Select at are not o assignm	ny numl currently ents at a	per of physical v assigned to a any time.	volumes an partition. Y	d virtual disks from the following lists of ou may use the Storage Management fur	devices which actions to change			
••• <u>Storage</u> Virtual Fibre Channel	Availat	ole Virt	ual Disks						
Optical/Tape Physical Adapters	Sel	ect	Name	^	Storage Pool	Size			
Summary			lp2vd1		rootvg	40 GB			
			lp5vd2		datapool1 (Default)	64 MB			
			lpar3rootvg datapool1 (Default) 64 GB						
	Availat	ole Phy	sical Volumes	5					
	Select	Name	<ul> <li><u>Size</u></li> </ul>		Physical Location Code				
		hdisk7	136.73 GB	U78A0.00	1.DNWHZWR-P2-D6				
		hdisk8 136.73 U78A0.001.DNWHZWR-P2-D7							
	hdisk11 10 GB U5802.001.0086848-P1-C3-T1-W201600A0B829AC12- L200000000000								
< Back Next Finish	Cancel					Help			

Figure 4-42 Create Partition: Storage

8. If you want to add a virtual Fibre Channel adapter to the new partition, click Add, as shown in Figure 4-43.



Figure 4-43 Create Partition: Virtual Fibre Channel

9. Under the Physical Port column, select the wanted physical port for the virtual Fibre Channel adapter, as depicted in Figure 4-44. Click **Next**.



Figure 4-44 Virtual Fibre Channel adapter port selection

10.Select the needed virtual or physical optical and tape devices, as shown in Figure 4-45. Click **Next**.

<b>Create Partition: Optica</b>	al/Tape					Step 8 of 11						
<u>Name</u> <u>Memory</u> <u>Processors</u> Etheract	Optical/T Select opti a partition	<b>Optical/Tape</b> Select optical or tape devices from the following list of devices which are not currently assigned to a partition.										
<u>Storage Type</u> <u>Storage</u> Virtual Fibre Channel	▼ Physic	Physical Optical Devices										
••• Optical/Tape Physical Adapters	Select on partition f	e or more un to use for stor	assigned physical optical device rage.	s that ye	ou want to assign	directly to the						
Summary	Select	Name ^	Description		Physical Loca	tion Code						
	<b>V</b>	cd0	SATA DVD-RAM Drive	U78A	0.001.DNWHZWF	R-P2-D2						
	✓ Virtual You can u that are i to assign the partit Create D	Virtual Optical Devices You can use virtual optical devices to mount and unmount media files, such as an ISO image, that are in your media library for use by the partition. Select a virtual optical device in the table to assign it to the new partition. Clear the selection for a device if you do not want to assign it to the partition. Click Modify to change the mounted media for a specific optical device. Click										
	Select	Name ^	Current Media	Curren	t Media Size	Mount Type						
		Unknown1	None <u>Modify</u>									
	Create De Physic Select on for storage	evice al Tape Dev e or more ph ge.	<b>ices</b> ysical tape devices that you wa	nt to ass	ign directly to the	e partition to use						
	Select	Select Name A Description Physical Location Code										
		rmt0 SAS 1/2-inch Cartridge Tape Drive U78A0.001.DNWHZWR-P2-D1										
< Back Next : Finish	Cancel					Help						

Figure 4-45 Create Partition: Optical/Tape (Devices)

11. Select the needed physical adapters as shown in Figure 4-46. Click Next.



Figure 4-46 Create Partition: Physical Adapters

12.A summary of the partition to be created opens, as shown in Figure 4-47. Click **Finish** to create the LPAR.

<b>Create Partition: Summ</b>	a <b>ry</b>	Step 11 of 11						
<u>Name</u> <u>Memory</u> <u>Processors</u> <u>Ethernet</u>	Summary This is a summary of your partition settings. Select Finish to create the partition. To make changes to the settings, select Back.							
<u>Storage Type</u> Storage	ou can modify the partition by using the partition properties task after you complete this wizard.							
Virtual Fibre Channel Optical/Tape Physical Adapters *** Summary	System name: Partition ID: Partition name: Environment: Memory mode: Memory: Processors: Virtual Ethernets: Host Ethernet adapter ports: Storage capacity:	8233-E8B_SN061AA6P 5 Ipar4_server1 AIX or Linux Dedicated 4 GB (4096 MB) 2 virtual 1 U78A0.001.DNWHZWR-P1-C6-T1 200.73 GB (205549 MB) Ipar3rootvg hdisk7						
	Virtual Fibre Channel ports: Optical devices:	U5802.001.0086848-P1-C3-T1						
	Virtual optical devices: Physical tape devices:	1 rmt0 U5802.001.0086848-P1-C8						
	Physical adapters:							
< Back Next > Finish	Cancel	Help						

Figure 4-47 Create Partition: Summary

To view the new LPAR and use it, under the Partition Management menu in the navigation area, click the **View/Modify Partitions** link. A list opens in the work area.

## 4.4.1 Create an LPAR based on an existing partition

The IVM can be used to create an LPAR that is based on an existing partition on your managed system. Any role other than *View Only* can be used to do this task. This task enables you to create an LPAR with the same properties as the selected existing partition (except for ID, name, physical volumes, and optical devices).

To create an LPAR that is based on an existing partition, do the following steps:

- Under Partition Management, click View/Modify Partitions. The View/Modify Partitions panel opens.
- 2. Select the LPAR that you want to use as a basis for the new partition.
- 3. In the **More Tasks** drop-down menu in the work area, select **Create based on** as shown in Figure 4-48.

View/Modify Partitions ?											
To perfo	To perform an action on a partition, first select the partition or partitions, and then select the task.										
System	0ver	/iew									
Total sy	stem m	emory:		12	8 GB	Т	otal proces	sing units:		16	
Memory	availa	ble:		29	GB	P	rocessing u	units available:		13.9	Ð
Reserve	ed firmv	vare memory:		6	GB	P	ocessor p	ool utilization:		0.10	0 (0.6%)
Availabl	e share	d memory pool	size:	64	.45 GB						
System	attentio	on LED:		In	active						
Partitio	n Deta	ils									
Turtitu	in Dett					_					
	6	Create	Partition	Activate	Shutdow	n	More 1	Tasks		~	
Select	<u>ID</u> ^	Name	State	<u>Uptime</u>	Memory	P	More T Open tern	'asks ninal window			Reference
							Delete Create ba	ised on a			Code
	1	<u>vios1</u>	Running	1.94 Days	20 GB	1	Operator Reference	panel sevice f Codes	unctions		
	2	lpar1 server1	Running	1.18 Days	4 GB	2	Mobilit Migrate Status	у			
	3	lpar2 server1	Not Activated		60 GB	1	Properties	3			00000000
	4	lpar3 server1	Not Activated		5 GB	2		0.2			00000000
▼	5	lpar4 server1	Not Activated		4 GB	2		0.2			00000000

Figure 4-48 The Create based on selection from the More Tasks drop-down menu

4. The Create Based On panel opens (Figure 4-49). Enter the name of the new partition, and click **OK**.

Create Based On			?
You have chosen to crea with the same properties devices. Virtual disks wil	te a new partition based s as the selected partition I be created with the sam	on partitio with the e le size and	n lpar4_server1 (5). This will create a new logical partition xception of ID, name, physical volumes, and optical in the same storage pool.
Chose the partition name	e, and select OK to create	e the partit	ion, or Cancel to return to the previous page.
Partition ID:	6		_
* Partition name:	lpar5_server1		
Memory:	4 GB (4096 MB)		
Processors:	2 virtual		
Virtual Ethernets:	1		
Create Virtual Disks:			
	Storage Pool	Size	
Virtual Disks:	datapool1 (Default)	64 GB	
*Required field			
OK Cancel			

Figure 4-49 Create based on: name of the new LPAR

5. The View/Modify Partitions panel opens, showing the new partition (Figure 4-50).

View/M	odify F	Partitions							?
To perfo	rm an a	action on a partit	tion, first se	lect the p	artition or	partitions, ar	d then select (	the task.	
System	0ver	/iew							
Total sy	stem m	emory:		128	3 GB	Total process	sing units:	16	
Memory	availal	ble:		25	GB	Processing u	nits available:	13.7	7
Reserve	ed firmv	vare memory:		60	iB AF CR	Processor po	ol utilization:	0.05	5 (0.3%)
System	attentio	on LED:	5126;	04. Ina	45 GB				
Partitio	on Deta	ils		1110					
									1
		Create	Partition	Activate	Shutdov	vn More	~		
Select	<u>ID</u> ^	<u>Name</u>	<u>State</u>	<u>Uptime</u>	<u>Memory</u>	Processors	Entitled Processing Units	<u>Utilized</u> Processing Units	Reference Code
	1	<u>vios1</u>	Running	1.95 Days	20 GB	13	1.3	0.04	
	2	lpar1 server1	Running	1.19 Days	4 GB	2	0.3	0.01	
	3	lpar2 server1	Not Activated		60 GB	1	0.1		0000000
	4	lpar3 server1	Not Activated		5 GB	2	0.2		00000000
	5	lpar4 server1	Not Activated		4 GB	2	0.2		0000000
	6	lpar5_server1	Not Activated		4 GB	2	0.2		00000000

Figure 4-50 Create based on: New logical partition is created

The virtual disks that are created have the same size and are in the same storage pool as the selected partition. However, the data in these disks is not cloned.

#### 4.4.2 Shutting down logical partitions

The IVM provides the following types of shutdown options for LPARs:

- Operating system (recommended)
- Delayed
- Immediate

The recommended shutdown method is to use the client operating system **shutdown** command. Use the immediate shutdown method as a last resort because it causes an abnormal shutdown that might result in data loss. (It is equivalent to pulling the power cord.)

If you choose not to use the operating system shutdown method, be aware of these considerations:

- Shutting down the LPARs is equivalent to pressing and holding the white control-panel power button on a server that is not partitioned.
- Use this procedure only if you cannot successfully shut down the LPARs through operating system commands. When you use this procedure to shut down the selected LPARs, the LPARs wait a predetermined amount of time to shut down. This procedure gives the LPARs time to end jobs and write data to disks. If the LPAR is unable to shut down within the predetermined amount of time, it ends abnormally, and the next restart might take a long time.

Take the following steps to shut down an LPAR:

- From the Partition Management menu, click View/Modify Partitions. The View/Modify Partitions panel opens.
- 2. Select the LPAR that you want to shut down.
- 3. From the Tasks menu, click Shutdown. The Shutdown Partitions panel opens (Figure 4-51).

Shutdown Partitions
You have chosen to shutdown the following partitions. The recommended shutdown method is to use the client operating systems <i>shutdown</i> command. Using the immediate shutdown method should be used as a last resort as this causes an abnormal shutdown which may result in data loss.
Choose the shutdown option and select OK to shutdown the partitions, or Cancel to return to the previous page.
Shutdown Type
• Operating System. Issues the shutdown command on the client operating system to shutdown the partition normally. Partition communication must be active.
O Delayed. Shuts down the partition by starting the delayed power off sequence. Linux will need the Linux on POWER Service and productivity toolkit installed.
$\bigcirc$ Immediate. Shuts down the partition as quickly as possible without notifying the operating system. This may result in data loss, and should only be used as a last resort.
Restart After Shutdown
Restart after shutdown completes Selected Partitions
ID Name State 4 lpar3_server1 Running OK Cancel

Figure 4-51 Shutdown Partitions: new options

- 4. Select Shutdown Type.
- 5. Optionally, select **Restart after shutdown completes** if you want the LPAR to start immediately after it shuts down.
- Click OK to shut down the partition. The View/Modify Partitions panel is displayed, and the partition is shut down.

**Shutdown of the IVM LPAR:** If the LPAR does not have a Resource Monitoring and Control (RMC) connection, the operating system (OS) shutdown type is disabled. The *Delayed* type becomes the default selection. When the IVM logical partition is selected, the only available option is OS shutdown. In addition, a warning is placed at the top of the panel which indicates that shutting down the IVM LPAR affects other running LPARs.

#### 4.4.3 Monitoring tasks

In IVM, you can view and monitor the most recent 40 tasks. All actions that a user can do in the GUI become *tasks*. All tasks are audited at the task level. Each task can have subtasks. The status of each subtask is managed. When you do a task, the user gets a *Busy* dialog, which indicates that the task is running. You can go away from the page and do other tasks.
To view the properties of the tasks, take the following steps:

- 1. In the Service Management menu, click **Monitor Tasks**. The Monitor Tasks panel opens.
- 2. Select the task for which you want to view the properties (Figure 4-52).

Integrated Virtualization Manager				1///		IBA	line o					
Welcome padmin : vios1				E	Edit my profile   H	lelp   Log o	ut					
Partition Management	Monitor	Tasks				?						
<u>View/Modify Partitions</u> <u>View/Modify System Properties</u> <u>View/Modify Shared Memory Pool</u>	The last it's prop	The last 40 tasks that have been run from the web interface on the system are listed below. Select the task to view it's properties.										
I/O Adapter Management	Homeo											
<u>View/Modify Host Ethernet Adapters</u> View/Modify <u>Virtual Ethernet</u>		Properties					E					
<u>View/Modify Physical Adapters</u> <u>View Vidual Fibre Channel</u>	Select	Name	Status	<u>Start Time</u> ∽	Task Duration	User ID						
Virtual Storage Management	Q	Modify partition properties	Successful	9/20/12 3:38:32 PM	00:00:00	padmin						
<u>View/Modify Virtual Storage</u>	0	Delete partition	Successful	9/20/12 3:36:22 PM	00:00:08	padmin						
IVM Management  View/Modify User Accounts	0	Modify partition properties	Successful	9/20/12 3:36:01 PM	00:00:00	padmin						
View/Modify TCP/IP Settings     Guided Setup	0	Activate	Successful	9/20/12 3:33:15 PM	00:00:00	padmin						
Enter PowerVM Edition Key Service Management	0	Modify partition properties	Successful	9/20/12 3:32:58 PM	00:00:06	padmin						
Electronic Service Agent     Service Focal Point	0	Modify virtual Fibre Channel port properties	Failed	9/20/12 3:32:23 PM	00:00:00	padmin						
<u>Manage Serviceable Events</u> <u>Service Utilities</u>	0	Modify virtual Fibre Channel port properties	Failed	9/20/12 3:32:21 PM	00:00:00	padmin						
<u>Create Serviceable Event</u> <u>Manage Dumps</u> Collect VPD Information	0	Modify virtual Fibre Channel port properties	Failed	9/20/12 3:31:59 PM	00:00:00	padmin						
Updates     Backup/Restore	0	Modify virtual Fibre Channel port properties	Failed	9/20/12 3:31:36 PM	00:00:00	padmin						
Application Logs     Monitor Tasks     Hardware Inventory	0	Modify virtual Ethernet	Failed	9/20/12 3:30:27 PM	00:00:00	padmin						
	0	Modify partition properties	Successful	9/20/12 3:29:43 PM	00:00:00	padmin						
	0	Activate	Successful	9/20/12 3:25:37 PM	00:00:00	padmin	~					

Figure 4-52 Monitor Tasks: the last 40 tasks

3. Click Properties. The Task Properties window opens, as shown in Figure 4-53.

Task Overview									
Name	Status	Start Time	Task Duration	User ID					
Modify partition properties	Successful	9/20/12 3:38:32 PM	00:00:00	padmin					
F <b>ask Messages</b> Io messages F <b>ask Steps</b>	· 								
Task Messages No messages Task Steps Step Name	Stat	tus Step Durat	on Percent C	omplete					
Task Messages No messages Task Steps Step Name Modify partition properties	Stat	tus Step Durat sful 00:00:00	on Percent C 100%	omplete					

Figure 4-53 Task Properties

4. Click **Cancel** to close the Task Properties window. The Monitor Tasks panel opens.

You can also click the hyperlink of the task from which you want to view the properties. See more about hyperlinks in 4.4.4, "Hyperlinks for object properties" on page 94.

### 4.4.4 Hyperlinks for object properties

There are two ways to access the properties of an object. You can select the object and then select the properties task. Because this task is a frequent operation, there is another method to quickly access the properties of an object with one click: the hyperlinks. In a list view, the specified object has a hyperlink (typically on the Name) that, when selected, displays the properties sheet for the object. It behaves exactly as the Select  $\rightarrow$  Properties method, but it requires only one click. Even if another object is selected, clicking the hyperlink of an object always brings it up, as shown in Figure 4-54.

View/Modify Partitions 2												
To perfo	rm an a	action on a partit	ion, first sel	ect the pa	artition or	partitions, an	d then select th	ne task.				
System	System Overview											
Total sy	stem m	emory:		12	128 GB Total processing units:			16				
Memory	availal	ble:		28	28.25 GB Processing units available:		: 14.1					
Reserve	ed firmv	vare memory:		5.	75 GB	Processor p	ool utilization:	0.16	5 (1.0%)			
Availabl	e share	d memory pool	size:	64	.53 GB							
System	attentio	on LED:		In	active							
Partitio	n Deta	nils										
	6	Create *	Partition	Activate	Shutdow	n More	Tasks	~				
Select	<u>ID</u> ^	<u>Name</u>	<u>State</u>	<u>Uptime</u>	Memory	Processors	Entitled Processing	Utilized Processing	Reference Code			
_							onits	onits				
	1	<u>vios1</u>	Running	2 Days	20 GB	13	1.3	0.13				
	2 <u>Ipar1 server1</u> Running 1.24				4 GB	2	0.3	0.02				
3 Ipar2 server1 Not Activated				60 GB	1	0.1		0000000				
	4	lpar3nserver1	Running	1 Hours	5 GB	2	0.2	0.01				
	3	Ipar2_server1	Activated Running	1 Hours	60 GB 5 GB	1 2	0.1	0.01	0000000			

Figure 4-54 Hyperlinks

After you click the hyperlink, the properties of the objects open, as shown in Figure 4-55.

General Memory Processing Ethernet Storage Optical/Tape Devices Physical Adapters
General
Partition name: Ipar3 server1
Partition ID: 4
Environment: AIX or Linux
State: Running
Attention LED: Inactive 💌
Settings
Boot mode: Vormal V
Keylock position: Normal 👻
Partition workload group participant:
Automatically start when system starts:
Dynamic Logical Partitioning (DLPAR)
Partition hostname or IP address: 172.16.20.206
Particion communication state: Active
Memory DLPAR capable: Unknown Retrieve Capabilities
Processing DLPAR capable: Unknown
1/O adapter DEPAK capable: Unknown
OK Cancel

Figure 4-55 Properties of the object

# 4.5 IVM command-line interface

The text-based console with the command-line interface (CLI) is accessible through an ASCII terminal that is attached to a system port or through network connectivity by using the **telnet** command. The IP address is the same as the one used to connect to the GUI, and it was defined during the installation process. The CLI requires more experience to master than the GUI, but it offers more possibilities to tune the definitions of the partition and can be automated by using scripts.

### 4.5.1 Update the profile of the logical partition

Example 4-1 shows how to change the name of an LPAR with the **chsyscfg** command.

```
Example 4-1 Profile update
```

```
$ lssyscfg -r prof --filter "lpar_names=lpar1_server1" -F lpar_name
lpar1_server1
$ chsyscfg -r prof -i "lpar_name=lpar1_server1,new_name=LPAR1_new_name"
$ lssyscfg -r prof --filter "lpar_names=LPAR1_new_name" -F lpar_name
LPAR1_new_name
```

### 4.5.2 Power on a logical partition

Example 4-2 shows how to start an LPAR by using the **chsysstate** command. To follow the start process, use the **lsrefcode** command.

Example 4-2 Power on a partition

```
$ chsysstate -o on -r lpar -n lpar1_server1
$ lsrefcode -r lpar --filter "lpar_names=lpar1_server1" -F refcode
CA00E1F1
$ lsrefcode -r lpar --filter "lpar_names=lpar1_server1" -F refcode
CA00E14D
```

#### 4.5.3 Console Terminal for IVM logical partition

There are two ways by which you can open a console for a VIO client LPAR:

- IVM GUI
- Virtual I/O Server command line

#### IVM GUI to open the console

Open the console for the Virtual I/O Server (the only way to access the console remotely for the Virtual I/O Server managed by IVM) and the Virtual I/O Server client by using this method.

To open console of a partition: This process requires a supported Java enabled browser.

Following are the steps to open the console of a partition:

- 1. Select the partition for which you want to open the console.
- 2. Then, select the More Tasks  $\rightarrow$  Open terminal window.

Figure 4-56 shows the IVM menu to *Open terminal window*:

View/M	View/Modify Partitions ?									
To perform an action on a partition, first select the partition or partitions, and then select the task.										
System Overview										
System Overview										
Total sy	stem m	emory:		otal processing units:	16					
Memory	/ availal	ble:			56.75 GB	P	Processing units available: 14.2			
Reserve	ed firmv	vare memory:			3.25 GB	P	Processor pool utilization: 0.03 (0.2%)			
Availabl	le share	d memory pool	size:		49.75 GB					
System	attentio	on LED:			Inactive					
Partitio	on Deta	ails								
	in Dett									
	6	Create *	Partition	Activate	e Shutdo	wn	More Tasks	*		
Select		Name	State	Untime	Memory	Pre	More Tasks		Peference	
Sciect	10	Marrie	orare	openne	<u>Incinory</u>		Delete		Code	
							Create based on			
	1	vios1	Runnina	2.08	16 GB	16	Operator panel service functions			
	-			Days			Mobility			
	2	lpar1 server1	Running	4.67	2 GB	2	Migrate			
				Hours			Status			
						_	Properties			

Figure 4-56 IVM menu to open the console

3. When you click **Open terminal window**, the console window opens and prompts for the Virtual I/O Server (IVM) password (for both the Virtual I/O Server and virtual I/O client consoles). Then, enter the virtual I/O client password.

Figure 4-57 shows the console window that opens and waits for the user to enter their Virtual I/O Server password.



Figure 4-57 Console window of the IVM GUI

#### Using Virtual I/O Server command line to open the console

By using the command line, you can open the console only for VIO clients, not for the Virtual I/O Server.

By using the command line, take the following steps to open the console for VIO clients:

- 1. Telnet or Secure Shell (SSH) to Virtual I/O Server.
- 2. Use mkvt -id <partition ID> to open the console.

In Figure 4-58, the highlighted box in the IVM GUI shows which partition ID belongs to the corresponding partitions.

Partition Details											
Create Partition Activate Shutdown More Tasks 🗸											
Select	<u>ID</u> ^	<u>Name</u>	<u>State</u>	<u>Uptime</u>	<u>Memory</u>	Processors	<u>Entitled</u> <u>Processing</u> <u>Units</u>	<u>Utilized</u> Processing <u>Units</u>	Reference Code		
	1	<u>vios1</u>	Running	2.11 Days	16 GB	16	1.6	0.05			
	2	lpar1 server1	Running	5.34 Hours	2 GB	2	0.2	0.01			

Figure 4-58 IVM GUI for partition ID

Figure 4-59 shows how to open the console of a virtual I/O client through a Virtual I/O Server telnet session.

```
login: padmin
padmin's Password:
Last unsuccessful login: Fri Sep 14 11:23:18 CDT 2012 on /dev/pts/3 from 172.16.254.
18
Last login: Fri Sep 14 15:39:12 CDT 2012 on /dev/pts/0 from 172.16.254.18
$ mkvt -id 2
AIX Version 7
Copyright IEM Corporation, 1982, 2012.
Console login:
```

Figure 4-59 Console window through Virtual I/O Server CLI

**To close a console:** To forcefully close a console that is already open, use the **rmvt** -id <partition ID> command.

#### 4.5.4 Install an operating system on a logical partition

The operating system installation process is similar to the process for stand-alone systems. Use the following main steps to install an operating system on an LPAR:

- 1. Log in to the IVM partition.
- 2. Open a virtual terminal for the LPAR to be installed with the **mkvt** command in the Virtual I/O Server CLI, or with the IVM GUI. You must specify the ID of the LPAR when you use the CLI, as shown in Example 4-3.

Example 4-3 Open a virtual terminal

```
$ mkvt -id 2
AIX Version 7
Copyright IBM Corporation, 1982, 2012.
Console login:
```

3. Start the LPAR in the *system management services* (*SMS*) mode. You can change the boot mode in the properties of the partition profile before you start it. Or, you can enter 1 on the virtual terminal at the very beginning of the boot process, as shown in Example 4-4.

Example 4-4 Boot display

ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	IBM
ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	IBM
ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	IBM
ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	IBM
ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	IBM
ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	IBM
ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	IBM
IBM	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	IBM	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	ΙBΜ	IBM
		1	= SN	1S Me	enu							5 =	Defa	ult	Boot	: Lis	st	
		8	= 0p	oen F	irmw	vare	Pron	npt				6 =	Stor	red E	Boot	List	5	
	Men	iory		Кеу	/boar	rd	Ne	etwor	٠k	SC	SI	S	Speak	er				

- 4. Select a boot device, such as a virtual optical device, or a network for the *Network Installation Management (NIM)* installation.
- 5. Boot the LPAR.
- 6. Select the system console and the language.
- 7. Select the disks to be installed.

The installation of the operating system starts. Proceed as directed by your operating system installation instructions.

# 4.6 Optical device sharing

You can dynamically add, move, or remove optical devices from or to any LPAR, regardless of whether the LPAR is running.

The following steps describe how to change the assignment of an optical device:

1. Under the Virtual Storage Management menu in the navigation area, click View/Modify Virtual Storage and select the Optical Devices tab in the work area.

- 2. Select the optical device that you want to modify, as shown in Figure 4-60.
- 3. Click Modify partition assignment in the task area.

View/Modify Virtual Storage ?									
Virtual Dis	sks Storag	e Pools Physical Volumes	Optical/Tape						
▼ Physi	▼ Physical Optical Devices								
You can a optical de	You can assign physical optical devices on the system directly to a partition to use for storage. Select the physical optical device, then select the task that you want to perform.								
	ð 🐨 🛛 м	odify partition assignment							
Select	Name ^	Description	Assigned Partition	Physical Location Code					
	cd0	SATA DVD-RAM Drive		U78A0.001.DNWHZWR-P2-D2					
You can Library Media lil <b>Thysi</b>	<ul> <li>Virtual Optical Media (No media library)</li> <li>You can assign virtual optical media, such as an ISO image, directly to a partition to use for storage. Click Create Library to create the media library.</li> <li>Media library size: None Create Library</li> <li>Physical Tape Devices</li> </ul>								
You can task tha	assign physic t you want to	al tape devices directly to a par perform.	tition to use for storage.	Select the tape device, then select the					
		Description	And and a still	ing Dissigning Cont					
Select	Name ^	Description	Assigned Partit	UT2040.001 DNIMUTIND D2 D1					
	rmtu S	AS 1/2-inch Cartridge Tape Dri	ve	078A0.001.DNWH2WR-P2-D1					

Figure 4-60 Optical Devices selection

4. Select the name of the LPAR to which you want to assign the optical device, as shown in Figure 4-61. You can also remove the optical device from the current LPAR by selecting **None**.

Modify Optical D	evice Partition Assi	ignment	
You can assign the selecting None for	e listed optical devices the New Partition valu	to a different partitio Ie.	n. You can also remove their current partition assignment by
* New partition:	×		
Name Current	None 🕅	rrent Partition State	
cd0	lpar1_server1 (2)	t Available	
	lpar2_server1 (3) lpar3_server1 (4)		
* Required field	.pare_aarrait ( )	1	
OK Cancel			

Figure 4-61 Optical Device Partition Assignment

- 5. Click **OK**.
- 6. If you move or remove an optical device from a running LPAR, you are prompted to confirm the forced removal before the device is removed. Because the device becomes unavailable, log in to the LPAR and remove the optical device before you go further. Press the Eject button. If the drawer opens, it is an indication that the device is not mounted.
- 7. Click OK.
- 8. The new list of optical devices is displayed with the changes that you made.

# 4.7 Logical partition configuration changes

As needed, you might want to modify the properties of the IVM or logical partitions (LPARs). With a dynamic logical partition (LPAR) operation, you can change the resources in run time.

### 4.7.1 Dynamic LPAR operations on an IVM partition

Resources such as processors, memory, and physical/virtual adapters can be dynamically allocated or released on the IVM partition. You can run those operations either on the GUI or the CLI.

### Dynamic LPAR on memory using the GUI

The following steps describe how to increase memory size dynamically for the IVM partition:

- 1. Click View/Modify Partitions.
- 2. Select the IVM partition, as shown in Figure 4-62.

To perform an action on a partition, first select the partition or partitions, and then select the task.									
5									
3.7									
03 (0.2%)									
Reference									
<u>Code</u>									
00000000									
00000000									

Figure 4-62 View/Modify Partitions: dynamic LPAR memory operation

- 3. Select **Properties** from the **More Tasks** drop-down menu (or use the one-click hyperlink method explained in 4.4.4, "Hyperlinks for object properties" on page 94).
- 4. Modify the pending values as needed. In Figure 4-63, the assigned memory is increased by 4 GB. Click **OK**.

<b>Partition Properties</b>	Partition Properties: vios1 (1)								
General Memory	General Memory Processing Ethernet Physical Adapters								
Modify the settings b the current and pend	Modify the settings by changing the pending values. The changes will be applied immediately: however, synchronizing the current and pending values might take some time.								
Memory mode: Dedi	icated								
All memory values s	hould be in multiples	of 256 MB.							
Property	Current	Pending							
Minimum memory	1 GB (1024 MB)	1 GB 💌							
Assigned memory	Assigned memory 16 GB (16384 MB) 20 GB 🖌								
Maximum memory	20 GB (20480 MB)	20 GB 💌							

Figure 4-63 Partition Properties: Virtual I/O Server; Memory tab; increase memory size

Memory is not added or removed in a single operation. You can monitor the status by looking at the partition properties.

#### Dynamic LPAR operation on virtual processors using the command line

Log in to the IVM by using the CLI and run your dynamic LPAR operation. Example 4-5 shows how to add a 0.1 processing unit dynamically to the IVM by using the **chsyscfg** command.

Example 4-5 Dynamic LPAR virtual processor operation

```
$ lshwres -r proc --level lpar --filter "lpar_names=vios1" -F curr_proc_units
1.60
$ chsyscfg -r prof -i lpar_name=vios1,desired_proc_units=1.3,desired_procs=13
$ lshwres -r proc --level lpar --filter "lpar_names=vios1" -F curr_proc_units
1.30
```

### Dynamic LPAR operation on physical adapters using graphical interface

In the partition properties of the IVM, click the **Physical Adapters** tab. Select or clear the adapters on which you want to perform a dynamic LPAR operation, and click **OK**.

Figure 4-64 shows the dynamic LPAR removal of two empty slots from the Virtual I/O Server.

P	Partition Properties: vios1 (1)										
(	General	Memory Processing	Ethernet Physical Adapters								
	The selected rows in the table of physical adapters represent the adapters currently assigned to the partition. All unselected rows represent adapters that have not been assigned. You can change the adapter assignments for the partition by deselecting existing items or selecting items that are not currently assigned.										
1	Selectio	n assistant:									
L	All	V Select Deselect									
L											
	Select	Physical Location Code ^	Description	Bus ID							
	<ul><li>✓</li></ul>	U78A0.001.DNWHZWR-P1- C1	Empty slot	516							
		U78A0.001.DNWHZWR-P1- C2	4-Port 10/100/1000 Base-TX PCI-Express Adapter (14106803) [+] View Children	517							
		U78A0.001.DNWHZWR-P1- C3	4-Port 10/100/1000 Base-TX PCI-Express Adapter (14106803) [+] View Children	519							
	<ul><li>✓</li></ul>	U78A0.001.DNWHZWR-P1- C4	2-Port 10/100/1000 Base-TX PCI-X Adapter (14108902) [+] View Children	514							
	<ul><li>✓</li></ul>	U78A0.001.DNWHZWR-P1- C5	2-Port 10/100/1000 Base-TX PCI-X Adapter (14108902) [+] View Children	515							
	<b>V</b>	U78A0.001.DNWHZWR-P1- C10	PCI Express x1 Auxiliary Cache Adapter [+] View Children	518							
	<ul><li>✓</li></ul>	U78A0.001.DNWHZWR-P1- T3	USB Enhanced Host Controller (3310e000) [+] View Children	513							
		U78A0.001.DNWHZWR-P1- T9	PCI-X266 Planar 3Gb SAS RAID Adapter [+] View Children	512							
Π		U5802.001.0086848-P1-C1	PCI Express x8 Ext Dual-x4 3Gb SAS Adapter [+] View Children	288							
		U5802.001.0086848-P1-C2	8Gb PCI Express Dual Port FC Adapter (df1000f114108a03) [+] View Children	289							
	<b>V</b>	U5802.001.0086848-P1-C3	8Gb PCI Express Dual Port FC Adapter (df1000f114108a03) [+] View Children	290							
	<ul><li>✓</li></ul>	U5802.001.0086848-P1-C4	8Gb PCI Express Dual Port FC Adapter (df1000f114108a03) [+] View Children	292							
	<b>V</b>	U5802.001.0086848-P1-C5	8Gb PCI Express Dual Port FC Adapter (df1000f114108a03) [+] View Children	293							
	<b>V</b>	U5802.001.0086848-P1-C6	Empty slot	294							
		U5802.001.0086848-P1-C7	Empty slot	296							
	<b>V</b>	U5802.001.0086848-P1-C8	10 Gigabit Ethernet-SR PCI-Express Host Bus Adapter (2514300014108c03) [+] View Children	297							
		U5802.001.0086848-P1-C9	Empty slot	298							
		U5802.001.0086848-P1-C10	Empty slot	299							
L											
_	_										
	ок с	ancel									

Figure 4-64 Dynamic LPAR of physical adapters

### Dynamic LPAR operation on HEA adapters using graphical interface

In the partition properties of the IVM, click the **Ethernet** tab. Select or clear the HEA adapters on which you want to perform a dynamic LPAR, and click **OK**.

Figure 4-65 shows the dynamic LPAR removal of one HEA port.

Pa	Partition Properties: vios1 (1)						
G	General Memory Processing Ethernet Physical Adapters						
1	Host	Ethern	et Adapte	rs			
A	Host E	thernet	Adapter (H	EA) allows you to provide multiple	partitions direct	access to the physical E	thernet ports. The
se re	elected	rows II nt ports	the table o that have n	of physical Ethernet ports represent ot been assigned. You can change	the physical po the assignment	rts assigned to the partit s for the partition by des	electing existing items
0	select	ting iter	ns that are i	not currently assigned. You can als Adapter view	o view or modif	y the details of the physi	cal ports in the
Ľ	1010/1110	any no	St Ethornot /	Adapter view.			
	Select	<u>Type</u>	Link State	Physical Location Code ^	MAC Address	Available Connections	
		1 G	Up	U78A0.001.DNWHZWR-P1-C6-T1		0	
		1 G	Down	U78A0.001.DNWHZWR-P1-C6-T2		14	
IT		1 G	Down	U78A0.001.DNWHZWR-P1-C6-T3		14	
		1.6	Down	U7840 001 DNWHZWR-P1-C6-T4		14	
		10	Down	070A0.001.DNWH2WK-F1-C0-14		14	
	Vieter	al Etha	un of Adapt	tour			
-	VIFLU		rnet Auap				
4	ou can ) or cre	change eate ada	e the assigne apters.	ed virtual Ethernet for each of this p	partition's virtua	l Ethernet adapters (exc	ept adapters 1 through
					-		
	Adapte	r		Virtual Ethernet			
	1	1 1 - ent12 (U78A0.001.DNWHZWR-P1-C6-T1)					
	2	2 2					
	3	3 3					
	4 4						
	Create Adapter						
2	Can	cel					

Figure 4-65 Dynamic LPAR of an HEA

### Dynamic LPAR operation on virtual adapters using graphical interface

You are unable to remove virtual Ethernet adapters, but you can add them by using dynamic LPAR.

1. In the partition properties of the IVM, click the **Ethernet** tab. Click **Create Adapter**, as shown in Figure 4-66.

Partition	Partition Properties: vios1 (1)						
General	General Memory Processing Ethernet Physical Adapters						
▼ Host	Ethern	iet Adaptei	rs				
A Host E selected	thernet rows in	t Adapter (H n the table o	EA) allows you to provide multiple of physical Ethernet ports represent	partitions direct the physical po	access to the physical E orts assigned to the partit	thernet ports. The tion. All unselected rows	
represer or select	nt ports ting iter	that have n ns that are i	ot been assigned. You can change not currently assigned. You can als	the assignment o view or modif	s for the partition by des y the details of the physi	electing existing items ical ports in the	
View/Mo	dify Ho	st Ethernet /	Adapter view.		,		
Select	Type	Link State	Physical Location Code ^	MAC Address	Available Connections		
	1 G	Up	U78A0.001.DNWHZWR-P1-C6-T1		0		
	1 G	Down	U78A0.001.DNWHZWR-P1-C6-T2		14		
	1 G	Down	U78A0.001.DNWHZWR-P1-C6-T3		14		
	1 G	Down	U78A0.001.DNWHZWR-P1-C6-T4		14		
						]	
▼ Virtu	al Ethe	ernet Adapt	ters				
You can 4) or cre	change eate ad	e the assigne	ed virtual Ethernet for each of this p	partition's virtua	l Ethernet adapters (exc	ept adapters 1 through	
.,	,			-			
Adapte	er		Virtual Ethernet				
1	1	- ent12 (U78	3A0.001.DNWHZWR-P1-C6-T1)				
2	2		M				
3	3		×				
4	4 4						
Creat	Adap	ter					
ок с	ancel		let Adapters				

Figure 4-66 Dynamic LPAR for a virtual adapter

2. In the Enter Virtual Ethernet ID pop-up window, enter the Virtual Ethernet ID and click OK.

Figure 4-67 shows how to add a wanted VLAN at the time of dynamic LPAR.

the assigned virtual Ethernet for each of this papters.	partition's virtual Ethernet adapters (except adapters 1
Virtual Ethernet	
ent12 (U78A0.001.DNWHZWR-P1-C6-T1) 💌	]
~	
*	
	ent12 (U78A0.001.DNWHZWR-P1-C6-T1) 😒

Figure 4-67 Dynamic LPAR for a virtual adapter by adding a VLAN

3. Click **OK** in the **View/Modify Partitions** wizard.

#### 4.7.2 LPAR resources management

The Virtual I/O Server also allows dynamic operations on resources such as the processor, memory, and virtual/physical I/O on a client partition. To accomplish this goal, the concept of a dynamic LPAR manager is introduced. This concept is a daemon task that runs in the Virtual I/O Server LPAR and monitors the pending and runtime values for processing and memory values. It also drives the runtime and pending values to be in sync.

To perform a dynamic LPAR operation, the user must modify the pending value. The dynamic LPAR manager does the appropriate operations on the LPAR to complete the runtime change. If the runtime and pending values are in sync, then the dynamic LPAR manager blocks until another configuration change is made. It does not poll when in this state. The dynamic LPAR manager (*dlparmgr*) manages the Virtual I/O Server LPAR directly, and the client LPARs are managed through the RMC daemon. Dynamic operations on the disks, optical devices, partition name, and boot mode were already allowed.

**Changes to pending value of LPAR:** If a change is made to a pending value of an LPAR in a workload management group with another LPAR, the workload management software must be aware of this change and dynamically adapt to it. Otherwise, manual intervention is required. This process only applies to processors and memory.

When the dlparmgr encounters an error, it is written to the dlparmgr status log, which can be read with the **lssvcevents** -t dlpar command. This log contains the last drmgr command that is run for each object type, for each LPAR. It includes the responses from the drmgr command. The user is not notified directly of these errors; their indication is that the pending values are out of sync. The GUI enables you to see the state and gives you more information about the result of the operation. See Figure 4-72 on page 111.

The dynamic LPAR capabilities for each logical partition are returned as an attribute on the **lssyscfg -r lpar** command. This process allows the GUI to selectively enable/disable a dynamic LPAR based on the current capabilities of the logical partition.

#### Setup of dynamic LPAR

To enable dynamic LPAR operations, you must enable RMC communication between the IVM LPAR and the client LPARs:

- 1. Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol (TCP/IP) must be configured in the IVM LPAR, or you cannot use the IVM browser interface.
- For the IVM LPAR, select which physical interface will be used to provide the bridge between the internal VLAN and the real external network, in this case VLAN-1 and en0. The client LPAR can have a TCP/IP configuration on that same subnet or on another one, depending on their external network or switch.
- If multiple interfaces are configured in the Virtual I/O Server (and thus, multiple TCP/IP addresses), the LPARs must be on the same network. Therefore, they must be able to ping each other.
- 4. The client LPAR must have TCP/IP configured (on the same subnet that you selected for IVM-to-Client communication). You then must wait 2 or 3 minutes while the RMC subsystem completes the *handshake* between the client LPAR and the IVM LPAR. Viewing the client LPAR properties then shows the IP address, and the communication status equal to Active. Clicking **Retrieve Capabilities** verifies that dynamic LPAR operations are possible.

**RMC and RSCT requirements:** The following website contains the RMC and RequestSecurityTokenCollection (RSCT) requirements for dynamic LPAR, including the additional file sets that must be installed on Linux clients:

https://www14.software.ibm.com/webapp/set2/sas/f/lopdiags/home.html

#### Graphical user interface changes for dynamic LPAR

The GUI for performing dynamic LPAR operations is the same as the interface for performing static operations. Specifically, the user changes the pending value. Because the **chsyscfg** command can be used for dynamic LPAR, the GUI can use the same commands for both static and dynamic reconfiguration. The GUI disables changes for LPARs that do not support dynamic LPAR. For LPARs that do support certain dynamic LPAR operations (for example, processing, but not memory), the operation that is not supported is disabled appropriately. An inline message is then displayed indicating why they might not change the value.

The GUI also displays a *details* link next to the warning exclamation point when resources are out of sync. This view yields a pop-up window with the last run status of the dlparmgr for the specified LPAR and resource.

#### Partition properties changes for dynamic LPAR

A new section was added to the *General* panel of the properties sheet. This section indicates the RMC connection state, the IP address of the LPAR, and the dynamic LPAR capabilities of the logical (client) partition.

Because retrieving these dynamic LPAR capabilities can be a time-consuming operation (generally less than one second, but can be up to 90 seconds with a failed network connection), the initial capabilities are displayed as *Unknown* (if the Partition communication state is Active). Click **Retrieve Capabilities** to retrieve them and update the fields.

Table 4-1 provides more information about the different fields that are shown in Figure 4-68.

Table 4-1 Field name values

Field name	Values
Partition host name or IP address	The IP address (or DNS host name) of the LPAR. This can be blank if RMC is not configured.
Partition communication state	Inactive, Active, Not Configured. <b>Note:</b> The name of this field matches the "Partition communication" field in the TCP/IP settings.
Memory dynamic LPAR capable	Yes, No, Unknown. <b>Note:</b> This will always default to "No" if you have not successfully been able to query the partition (RMC state is not active). No Linux LPARs are currently memory dynamic LPAR capable. <i>Unknown</i> will be the default state if communication is Active but the user has not selected Retrieve Capabilities.
Processing dynamic LPAR capable	Yes, No, Unknown. <b>Note:</b> If RMC is active, this will nearly always be Yes, but there is no guarantee. $Unknown$ will be the default state if communication is Active but the user has not selected Retrieve Capabilities.
Retrieve Capabilities	Button that is visible if the Partition Communication State is active and the user has not previously selected the button on this properties sheet.

Partition Properties: lpar1_server1 (2	2) 7
General Memory Processing	Ethernet Storage Optical/Tape Devices Physical Adapters
_	
General	
Partition name:  par1_server1	
Partition ID: 2	
Environment: AIX or Linux	
State: Running	
Attention LED: Inactive 🛩	
Settings	
Boot mode:	Normal
Keylock position:	Normal 💌
Partition workload group participant:	
Automatically start when system starts:	
Dynamic Logical Partitioning (DLPAR	8)
Partition hostname or IP address: 172.16	5.20.202
Partition communication state: Active	
Memory DLPAR capable: Unknow	wn Retrieve Capabilities
Processing DLPAR capable: Unkno	wn
I/O adapter DLPAR capable: Unkno	wn
-	
UK Cancel	

Figure 4-68 Dynamic LPAR properties

#### Memory tab

If the LPAR is powered on and the memory is dynamic-LPAR capable (see capabilities on the General tab), then the Pending assigned value is enabled. (Minimum memory and Maximum memory are still disabled). The user can change this value and select OK. The change takes effect immediately for the pending value. The dlparmgr daemon then works to bring the pending and current (runtime) values into sync. If these values are not in sync, the user sees the warning icon, as shown in Figure 4-71 on page 110. Figure 4-69 and Figure 4-70 show a change.

<b>Partition Properties</b>	s: lpar1_server1	(2)	2			
General Memor	General Memory Processing Ethernet Storage Optical/Tape Devices Physical Adapters					
Modify the settings b current and pending	Modify the settings by changing the pending values. The changes will be applied immediately: however, synchronizing the current and pending values might take some time.					
Memory mode: De	dicated 💌 🚺	You cannot change the	e memory mode of this partition because the partition is active.			
All memory values s	hould be in multiple	es of 256 MB.				
Property	Current	Pending				
Minimum memory	256 MB	256 MB 💙				
Assigned memory	Assigned memory 4 GB (4096 MB) 4 GB 🖌					
Maximum memory 8 GB (8192 MB) 8 GB GB						
OK Cancel						

Figure 4-69 Partition Properties: Memory tab

Partition Properties	: lpar1_server1	(2)	2			
General Memory	Processing	Ethernet Stora	ge Optical/Tape Devices Physical Adapters			
Modify the settings b current and pending	Modify the settings by changing the pending values. The changes will be applied immediately: however, synchronizing the current and pending values might take some time.					
Memory mode: Dec	dicated 🔽 🚺	You cannot change the	e memory mode of this partition because the partition is active.			
All memory values s	hould be in multipl	es of 256 MB.				
Property	Current	Pending				
Minimum memory	256 MB	256 MB 🛩				
Assigned memory	4 GB (4096 MB)	2 GB 💌				
Maximum memory 8 GB (8192 MB) 8 GB						
Cancel						

Figure 4-70 Dynamic LPAR of memory: removal of 2 GB of memory

Figure 4-71 depicts a warning in the work area because pending and current values are not in sync.

View/M	View/Modify Partitions								2
To perfo	To perform an action on a partition, first select the partition or partitions, and then select the task.								
	_								
System	1 Over	lew							
Total system memory:					128 GB Total processing units: 16				
Memory available:					101 GB Processing units available: 14				
Reserved firmware memory:					1.75 GB Processor pool utilization: 0.06 (0.4%)				(0.4%)
Availab	le share	d memory pool	size:		0 MB				
System	attentio	on LED:			Inactive				
Partitio	on Deta	nils							
			11	1					
		* Create	Partition	Activate	Shutdown	More Tasks -		*	
Select	ID ^	Name	State	Uptime	Memory	Processors	Entitled	Utilized	Reference
							Processing	Processing Units	<u>Code</u>
				17.22			onica	011103	
	1	<u>vios1</u>	Running	Hours	20 GB	13	1.3	0.03	
	2	loant convert	Dupping	17.16	2 GB	2	0.4	0.01	
	2	ipari serveri	Kunning	Hours	( <u>details</u> ]	2	0.4	0.01	
	3	lpar2 server1	Open	17.16	512 MB	1	0.1	0.01	AA00E158
	-		Firmware	Hours		_			
	4	lpar3 server1	Open Firmware	17.16 Hours	1 GB	2	0.2	0.01	AA00E158

Figure 4-71 Warning in work area because pending and current values are not in sync

For more information about the resource synchronization, click the details hyperlink, as shown in Figure 4-72.

Resource Synchronization Details:	Resource Synchronization Details: lpar1_server1 (2)					
Changing resource allocations while a p synchronized. The most common reaso particularly memory changes. Synchror	Changing resource allocations while a partition is active may result in pending and current resource values not being synchronized. The most common reason for this is that certain resource changes may take some time to synchronize - particularly memory changes. Synchronizing these values requires that the partition communication state be active.					
The resource types are listed below, ald the latest synchronization commands ru	ong with their current s in will be displayed.	state. If the res	ource is not synchronized, th	en details a	about	
Memory						
Resource synchronized: No Reason: Synchronizatio	on in progress (code 1)	)				
Latest commands run on partition:	<b>-</b> '	Data and	0	0.1-1		
Reason	0/10/12 0:45:00 AM	Return Code	drmar a mam a 1 r w 5	Output		
Synchronization successful (code 0)	9/19/12 9:44:42 AM	0	anngi -cinemi-qii-i-wio			
Processing Units Resource synchronized: Yes	Processing Units Resource synchronized: Yes					
Processors						
Resource synchronized: Yes						
Uncapped Weight						
Resource synchronized: Yes						
Cancel						

Figure 4-72 Resource synchronization details

**Memory values:** The minimum and maximum memory values are enabled for the Virtual I/O Server/IVM LPAR at all times.

Table 4-2 provides possible memory field values.

Capability setting	Enabled fields	Introduction text
Yes	Assigned Memory	Modify the settings by changing the pending values. Changes will be applied immediately, but synchronizing the current and pending values might take some time.
No	None	Modify the settings by changing the pending values. This LPAR does not currently support modifying these values while running, so pending values can be edited only when the LPAR is powered off.
Unknown	Assigned Memory	Modify the settings by changing the pending values. This LPAR does not currently support modifying these values while running, so pending values can be edited only when the LPAR is powered off.

Table 4-2 Possible field modifications: memory

#### **Processing tab**

If the LPAR is powered on and is processor dynamic-LPAR capable (see capabilities on the General tab), then the Pending assigned values are enabled. The minimum and maximum (processing units and virtual processors) values are still disabled. The user can change these values and select OK. The change takes effect immediately for the pending value. The dlparmgr daemon then works to bring the pending and current (runtime) values into sync. If these values are not in sync, the user sees the warning icon as in the memory panel. As with the memory panel, the same rules apply regarding the enabled fields and introductory text for the various capability options.

#### **Dynamic logical partition status**

When a resource is not in sync, the warning icon is displayed on the View/Partition modify page with a *details* link. Selecting the details link yields the synchronization details pop-up window, as shown in Figure 4-72 on page 111.) In the first IVM release, when a dynamic resource is not in sync, a warning icon is displayed in the main partition list view next to the Memory or Processors resource. This icon also is displayed with text in the partition properties sheet.

A details link is now added next to the icon. This yields a pop-up window which shows the current dynamic LPAR status of the logical partition. All resources are shown in this window. If a resource is out of sync, the reason is provided. In addition, details about the previous two **drmgr** commands that were run against the LPAR in an attempt to synchronize the pending and current (runtime) values, are shown.

The Reason field generally matches the latest command run reason. But if the user modifies the minimum and maximum values without changing the assigned value, the dlparmgr considers the assigned values in sync, but the warning icon is still present.

### Dynamic LPAR operation on virtual disks by using the GUI

The following steps describe how to assign *Virtual Disks* and *Physical Volumes* that are present in the Virtual I/O Server's Virtual Fibre Channel dynamically to a partition using the GUI:

1. To add or remove virtual disks or physical volumes, click the **Storage** tab of Partition Properties, **Select** the disks that you want to add and clear the disks that you want to remove and click **OK**, as shown in Figure 4-73.

Partition Properties: lpar1_server1 (2)						
General Me	General Memory Processing Ethernet Storage Optical/Tape Devices Physical Adapters					
Virtual Disk	s					
The selected rows in the Virtual Disks table represent the storage currently assigned to the partition. All unselected rows represent storage that has not been assigned. You can change the storage assignments for the partition by deselecting existing items or selecting items that are not currently assigned. You can also create or modify storage in the Storage Management view.						
Select		Na	ame ^		Storage Pool	Size
		lp2vd1		rootvg		40 GB
		lp5vd1		rootvg		40 GB
partition by des storage in the S	stepres electing Storage	existing item Management	view.	ms that are	not currently assigned. You ca	n also create or modify
Select Nam	<u>ne</u> ^	<u>Size</u>			Physical Location Code	
✓ hdisk	(8 1	136.73 GB	U78A0.001.DNW	HZWR-P2-D	7	
✓ hdisk	10 1	10 GB	U5802.001.0086	848-P1-C3-	T1-W201600A0B829AC12-L100	000000000
hdisk	(11 1	10 GB	U5802.001.0086	848-P1-C3-	T1-W201600A0B829AC12-L200	000000000
▼ Virtual Fibr	e Chan	nel				
A virtual Fibre channel with physical adapters that support N_Port ID Virtualization (NPIV) ports provides the ability to give multiple logical partitions direct access to storage area devices in a storage area network (SAN). In the Worldwide Port Names table, you can add or remove a port name pair for this logical partition. You also can change the physical port assignment for a port name pair that this partition is using.						
Select Worldwide Port Names				Physical Port		
C050760303080060+ C050760303980061 for2 (U5802.001.00868/8-P1-C3-T1)						

Figure 4-73 View/Modify Virtual Storage: Virtual Disks selection

2. Log in to the related LPAR and discover the new disk by running the **cfgmgr** command. Example 4-6 shows how the partition discovers one new virtual disk.

Example 4-6 Virtual disk discovery

```
# lsdev -Cc disk
hdisk0 Available Virtual SCSI Disk Drive
hdisk1 Available C5-T1-01 MPIO DS4800 Disk
# cfgmgr
# lsdev -Cc disk
hdisk0 Available Virtual SCSI Disk Drive
hdisk1 Available C5-T1-01 MPIO DS4800 Disk
hdisk2 Available Virtual SCSI Disk Drive
```

Use the same procedure to add or remove virtual Fibre Channel adapters.

The same dynamic LPAR operation of disks can be done by using the View/Modify Virtual Storage menu in the navigation area. See more details in the section "Virtual disk/logical volume partition assignment" on page 58.

#### Operation on partition definitions by using the command-line interface

The command-line interface (CLI) for performing dynamic LPAR operations is the same as on the HMC. The dynamic LPAR Manager keys off differences between runtime and pending operations. The **chsyscfg** command is used for dynamic configuration changes because it updates the pending values.

You can perform the same operations with the CLI as with the GUI. Example 4-7 shows how to decrease processing units for an LPAR by using the **chsyscfg** command.

Example 4-7 Decreasing the processing units of lpar1\_server1

```
$ lssyscfg -r prof --filter "lpar_names=lpar1_server1" -F desired_proc_units
0.40
$ chsyscfg -r prof -i "lpar_name=lpar1_server1,desired_proc_units=0.3"
$ lssyscfg -r prof --filter "lpar_names=lpar1_server1" -F desired_proc_units
0.30
```

A warning icon with an exclamation point is displayed in the View/Modify Partitions window if the current and pending values are not synchronized.

Example 4-8 shows an increase of memory operation.

Example 4-8 Increasing the memory of Ipar1\_server1 with 2048 MB

```
$ lssyscfg -r prof --filter "lpar_names=lpar1_server1" -F desired_mem
2048
$ chsyscfg -r prof -i "lpar_name=lpar1_server1,desired_mem+=2048"
$ lssyscfg -r prof --filter "lpar_names=lpar1_server1" -F desired_mem
4096
```

### 4.7.3 Adding a client LPAR to the partition workload group

If you want to manage logical partition resources by using a workload management tool, you must add the client LPAR to the partition workload group.

A *partition workload group* identifies a set of LPARs that are on the same physical system. Some workload management tools require that additional software is installed on the LPARs to monitor its workload, manage its resources, or both. Workload management tools use partition workload groups to identify which LPARs they can manage. For example, *IBM Enterprise Workload Manager*<sup>TM</sup> (*EWLM*) can dynamically and automatically redistribute processing capacity within a partition workload group to satisfy workload performance goals. EWLM adjusts processing capacity that is based on calculations that compare actual performance of work that is processed by the partition workload group to the business goals defined for the work.

Workload management tools use dynamic LPAR to make resource adjustments that are based on performance goals. Therefore, each LPAR in the partition workload group must support dynamic LPAR. Verify that the LPAR that you want to add to the partition workload group supports dynamic LPAR for the resource type that your workload management tool adjusts, as shown in Table 4-3.

**Partition workload groups:** Systems that are managed by the IVM can have only one partition workload group for each physical server.

It is not required that all LPARs on a system participate in a partition workload group. Workload management tools manage the resources of only those LPARs that are assigned to a partition workload group. Workload management tools can monitor the work of an LPAR that is not assigned to a partition workload group, but they cannot manage the resources of the LPAR.

Logical partition type	Supports processor dynamic LPAR	Supports memory dynamic LPAR
AIX	Yes	Yes
Linux	Yes	Yes/no (SLES less than version 11 and RHEL less than 6.1 support memory add, but not memory removal).
IBM i	Yes	Yes

Table 4-3 Dynamic LPAR support

For example, the partition management function of EWLM adjusts processor resources that are based on workload performance goals. Thus, EWLM can adjust the processing capacity for AIX and Linux LPARs.

The following recommendations apply workload management:

- Do not add the management partition to the partition workload group. To manage LPAR resources, workload management tools often require that you install some type of management or agent software on the LPARs. To avoid creating an unsupported environment, do not install more software on the management partition.
- ► The dynamic LPAR support that is listed in Table 4-3 is not the same as the dynamic LPAR capabilities that are in the partition properties for an LPAR. The dynamic LPAR support that is listed in Table 4-3 reflects what each operating system supports regarding dynamic

LPAR functions. The dynamic LPAR capabilities that are shown in the partition properties for an LPAR reflect the following combinations:

- An RMC connection between the management partition and the client LPAR
- The operating system's support of dynamic LPAR (see Table 4-3 on page 115)

For example, an AIX client LPAR does not have an RMC connection to the management partition, but AIX supports both processor and memory dynamic LPAR. In this situation, the dynamic LPAR capabilities that are shown in the partition properties for the AIX LPAR indicate that the AIX LPAR is not capable of processor or memory dynamic LPAR. However, because AIX supports processor and memory dynamic LPAR, a workload management tool can dynamically manage its processor and memory resources. Workload management tools are not dependent on RMC connections to dynamically manage LPAR resources.

If an LPAR is part of the partition workload group, you cannot dynamically manage its resources from the IVM because the workload management tool is in control of dynamic resource management. Not all workload management tools dynamically manage both processor and memory resources. When you implement a workload management tool that manages only one resource type, you limit your ability to dynamically manage the other resource type. For example, EWLM dynamically manages processor resources, but not memory. AIX supports both processor and memory dynamic LPAR. EWLM controls dynamic resource management of both processor resources and memory for the AIX LPAR, but EWLM does not dynamically manage memory. Because EWLM has control of dynamic resource management, you cannot dynamically manage memory for the AIX LPAR from the IVM.

To add an LPAR to the partition workload group, complete the following steps:

- 1. Select the logical partition that you want to include in the partition workload group and click **Properties**. The Partition Properties window opens (Figure 4-74).
- 2. In the Settings section, select Partition workload group participant. Click OK.

Partition Properties: lpar1_ser	ver1 (2)
General Memory Proces	ssing { Ethernet { Storage { Optical/Tape Devices { Physical Adapters }
General	
Partition name:  par1_server1	
Partition ID: 2	
Environment: AIX or Linux	
State: Running	
Attention LED: Inactive 💌	
Settings	
Boot mode:	Normal
Keylock position:	Normal 👽
Partition workload group participa	ant:
Automatically start when system	starts: 🔽
Dynamic Logical Partitioning	(DLPAR)
Partition hostname or IP address	: 172.16.20.202
Partition communication state:	Active
Memory DLPAR capable:	Unknown Retrieve Capabilities
Processing DLPAR capable:	Unknown
I/O adapter DLPAR capable:	Unknown
OK Cancel	

Figure 4-74 Partition Properties: selecting the partition workload group

**Workload management:** For more information about partition workload management, refer to the following resources:

For AIX 7.1, refer to this website:

http://pic.dhe.ibm.com/infocenter/aix/v7r1/index.jsp?topic=%2Fcom.ibm.aix.basea
dmn%2Fdoc%2Fbaseadmndita%2Fwlm.htm

For AIX 6.1, refer to this website:

http://pic.dhe.ibm.com/infocenter/aix/v6r1/index.jsp?topic=%2Fcom.ibm.aix.basea
dmn%2Fdoc%2Fbaseadmndita%2Fht\_cnfgwlm.htm

## 4.8 Live Partition Mobility

*Live Partition Mobility (LPM)* is a feature which enables an active (or inactive) LPAR migration from one server to another. In this publication, we show how to do this migration through IVM between POWER6 and POWER7 processor-based servers.

Follow the requirements for LPM on an IVM environment:

- The source and destination system must be an IBM Power Systems POWER6 or POWER7 technology-based model.
- Both servers must have the PowerVM Enterprise feature activated.
- Both source and destination systems must be at firmware level 01Ex320 or later, where x is an S for BladeCenter, an L for entry servers (such as the Power 710, Power 720, Power 740, and Power 750).
- Virtual I/O Server must be installed at release level 1.5 or higher both on the source and destination systems.
- At the time of writing, the following operating systems are supported by LPM:
  - AIX 5.3 Level 5300-07; AIX 6.1, or later; and AIX 7.1, or later
  - Red Hat Enterprise Linux version 5 Update1, or later; and Red Hat Enterprise Linux version 6 Update1, or later
  - SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 10 Service Pack 1, or later; and SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 11 Service Pack 1
  - IBM i 7.1 TR4 PTF group SF9907 level 4, or later. LPM of an IBM i partition managed by IVM is currently not supported.

Although we suggest that you always use operating systems in the latest version and service pack, there are other considerations:

- All of the resources from the LPAR that you want to move must be virtualized and must use external storage, including the boot disks.
- Although there is a minimum required firmware level that we suggest, have the most current system firmware installed that is available.

To know the procedure for IVM updates, refer to 5.1.5, "IVM updates" on page 162.

If you are migrating between two different POWER processor technologies (as in our example) and you want to migrate from a POWER7 to a POWER6 processor-based server, ensure that the partition that you want to migrate is in the **POWER6** compatibility mode. The processor compatibility mode is shown in Figure 4-75.

This mode can be changed after the partition creation at the Processing tab of the Partition Properties window.

Partition Pr	operties:	lpar3_ser	ver1 (4	4)			2
General	Memory	Process	ing	Eth	ernet	Storage	Optical/Tape Devices Physical Adapters
Modify the s the current	settings by and pendir	changing th ng values m	e pend ght tak	ing va e som	lues. The o e time.	changes will	be applied immediately: however, synchronizing
Processin	g Units		Virtu	al Pro	cessors		
Property	Current	Pending	Prop	perty	Current	Pending	
Minimum	0.1	0.1	Minir	num	1	1	
Assigned	0.3	0.2	Assig	gned	2	2	
Maximum	16	16.0	Maxi	mum	16	16	
General							*
Prop	erty	Curre	nt		Pendi	ng	
Uncapped	weight	Medium -	128	28 Medium - 128 🔽			
Processor of	compatibilit	ty mode:					
Current	value:	<u> </u>	Р	OWER	7		
Preferre	Preferred value:		(	Defaul	t 🗸		
				Default			
			F	OWER	6+ 13		
OK Cance	el		E	OWER	7		

Figure 4-75 Partition Properties: Setting the POWER6 compatibility mode on the Processing tab

Follow these steps to perform the LPM process in an IVM environment:

1. Select the partition that you want to migrate on the View/Modify Partitions panel, as shown in Figure 4-76.

View/M	lodify I	Partitions							2
To perfo	To perform an action on a partition, first select the partition or partitions, and then select the task.								
Systen	1 Over	view							
Total sy	stem m	emory:		12	8 GB	Total proces	ssing units:	16	
Memory	/ availal	ble:		28	.25 GB	Processing	units available:	14.1	L
Reserve	ed firmv	vare memory:		5.	75 GB	Processor p	ool utilization:	0.14	4 (0.9%)
Availab	le share	d memory pool	size:	64	.53 GB				
System	attentio	on LED:		In	active				
Partitio	on Deta	nils							
						1			
	6	Create *	Partition	Activate	Shutdown	More T	asks	*	
Select	ID ^	Name	State	Uptime	Memory	Processors	Entitled	Utilized	Reference
							Processing	Processing	<u>Code</u>
				1.09			onics	onics	
	1	<u>vios1</u>	Running	Days	20 GB	13	1.3	0.12	
	2	lpar1 server1	Running	1.22	4 GB	2	0.3	0.01	
				Days					
	3	lpar2 server1	Not Activated		60 GB	1	0.1		0000000
	4	lpar3 server1	Running	31.8 Minutes	5 GB	2	0.2	0.01	

Figure 4-76 Selecting the LPAR on the View/Modify Partitions panel

2. On the More Tasks drop-down menu, select Migrate (Figure 4-77).

View/M	lodify F	Partitions								2
To perfo	To perform an action on a partition, first select the partition or partitions, and then select the task.									
Systen	1 Over	/iew								
Total sv	stem m	emory:		12	8 GB	Total proce	ssina units:		16	
Memory	/ availal	ble:		28	.25 GB	Processina	units available:		14.1	1
Reserve	ed firmv	vare memory:		5.3	75 GB	Processor p	ool utilization:		0.14	4 (0.9%)
Availab	le share	d memory pool	size:	64	.53 GB					()
System	attentio	on LED:		In	active					
Partitio	on Deta	lls								
	6	Reate	Partition	Activate	Shutdown	More T	asks	~	]	
						More T	asks			
Select		Name	<u>State</u>	Uptime	Memory	Open term	inal window			<u>Reference</u>
						Delete Create bay	ad on		ч	<u>code</u>
				1.98		Operator p	anel service fu	nctions		
	1	<u>vios1</u>	Running	Days	20 GB	Reference	Codes			
	2	land annual	Duranian	1.22	4.00	Mobility				
	2	ipari serveri	Kunning	Days	4 GB	Status				
	3	lpar2_server1	Not		60 GB					00000000
	5	iparz serveri	Activated		00.90	Properties				00000000
	4	lpar3 server1	Running	31.8 Minutes	5 GB	2	0.2	0.01		

Figure 4-77 Migrate option for selected LPAR on More Tasks in the View/Modify Partitions panel

3. In the next window, provide the **Remote IVM** IP address or the host name from the server to where you want to migrate your LPAR. Also, enter the padmin user's **Password**. Then, click **Validate**, as shown in Figure 4-78.

Migrate Partition: lpar1_server1 (2)
It might be possible to migrate this partition to run on another managed system. In order to migrate this partition, it must meet certain conditions. For details, consult your documentation. Specify the hostname or IP address of the remote Integrated Virtualization Manager (IVM) that controls the target managed system, and select Validate or Migrate.
* Remote IVM:
Remote user ID: padmin
Password:
*Required field
Validate Migrate Cancel

Figure 4-78 Migrate Partition panel with information fields

4. If there is an error which is not allowing the LPM process to occur, a message is shown in the Migrate Partition window. We assigned a physical adapter to the client partition to simulate an error, as shown in Figure 4-79.

Migrate Partition:	lpar1_server1 (2)							
Problems occurred for each problem m	Problems occurred while processing the data. A summary of all problems for this page are listed below. Additional details for each problem may be located next to the field causing the problem.							
[VIOSE01042028-0415] The partition cannot be migrated because it has physical I/O assignments.								
It might be possible meet certain conditio Integrated Virtualiza	It might be possible to migrate this partition to run on another managed system. In order to migrate this partition, it must meet certain conditions. For details, consult your documentation. Specify the hostname or IP address of the remote Integrated Virtualization Manager (IVM) that controls the target managed system, and select Validate or Migrate.							
* Remote IVM:	vios2							
Remote user ID:	padmin							
Password:	•••••							
* Required field								
Validate Migrate Cancel								

Figure 4-79 Migrate Partition panel with an error message

5. After the physical adapter was unassigned for that partition, the operation was successfully completed, as shown in Figure 4-80. Now select **Migrate**.

Migrate Partition:	lpar1_server1 (2)	?					
<b>I</b> The operation	The operation completed successfully.						
It might be possible meet certain conditi Integrated Virtualiza	to migrate this partition to run on another managed system. In order to migrate this partition, it mu ons. For details, consult your documentation. Specify the hostname or IP address of the remote ation Manager (IVM) that controls the target managed system, and select Validate or Migrate.	ıst					
* Remote IVM:	vios2						
Remote user ID:	padmin						
Password:	•••••						
* Required field Validate Migra	Cancel						

Figure 4-80 Migrate Partition window after validation

While the task is running, it is possible to see the migration status. Select the LPAR which is migrating on the View/Modify Partitions window. Then, click the More Tasks drop-down menu and select Status, as shown in Figure 4-81.

View/M	lodify F	Partitions								?
To perfo	orm an a	action on a partit	tion, first selec	t the partit	ion or par	titions, and th	en select the tas	k.		
System	1 Over	/iew								
Total sy	stem m	emory:		12	28 GB	Total proce	essing units:		16	
Memory	/ availal	ble:		23	3.25 GB	Processing	units available:		14.1	L
Reserve	ed firmv	vare memory:		5.	75 GB	Processor	pool utilization:		0.15	6 (0.9%)
Availabl	le share	d memory pool	size:	64	4.53 GB					
System	attentio	on LED:		In	nactive					
Partitio	on Deta	nils								
			1	1.					1	
	6 🛯	Create 🗧	Partition Ac	tivate S	hutdown	More Tas	ks	*		
Select		Name	State	Untime	Memory	More Tas	(S		tilized	Reference
Coloct	10	manna	<u>otato</u>	opanio	<u></u>	Delete	ai window		cessing	Code
						Create based	d on		<u>Units</u>	
	1	<u>vios1</u>	Running	2.08 Days	20 GB	Operator pan Reference Co	nel service functio odes	ins		
	2	lpar1 server1	Migrating - Running	1.73 Hours	4 GB	Migrate				
	3	lpar2 server1	Not Activated		60 GB	Properties				0000000
	4	lpar3 server1	Not Activated		10 GB	2	0.2			0000000

Figure 4-81 View/Modify Partitions panel: select Status for the LPAR in the migration process

According to our example, **Ipar1\_server1** is no more in the POWER7 processor-based server (Serial Number 061AA6P). Now it is running in the POWER6 processor-based server (Serial Number 1059C72), as shown in the AIX 7.1 command line on Example 4-9, and on Example 4-10.

Example 4-9 AIX (lpar1) serial number before LPM

```
# hostname
lpar1
# lsconf | grep -i Serial
Machine Serial Number: 061AA6P
* vsa0 U8233.E8B.061AA6P-V2-C0
LPAR Virtual Serial Adapter
```

Example 4-10 AIX (lpar1) serial number after LPM

```
# hostname
lpar1
# lsconf | grep -i Serial
Machine Serial Number: 1059C72
* vsa0 U9409.M50.1059C72-V3-C0
LPAR Virtual Serial Adapter
```

**LPAR migration:** The migrated LPAR keeps the same IP address when moved and does not cause any service interruption into the system. There is no need to migrate the LPAR after the process. LPM can also be done when the LPAR is inactive.

# 4.9 Network management

When IVM is installed, all physical Ethernet adapters that are installed in the system are managed by it. Logical partitions can have at most two virtual Ethernet adapters, each connected to one of the four virtual networks that are present in the system.

You can also configure physical Ethernet adapters for the client LPARs. The way to accomplish this is to deallocate the selected Ethernet adapter from the Virtual I/O Server partition, as shown in Figure 4-82 on page 124, and allocate it in the target LPAR. This process can be done during the LPAR creation or it can be changed later in the client LPAR profile, as shown in Figure 4-83 on page 124. There is no need to reboot the partition because of this change.

To allow partitions to access any external corporate network, every virtual network can be bridged to a physical adapter. For each network, a separate adapter is required. IVM provides a web interface to configure bridging.

When higher throughput and better link availability is required, Ethernet link aggregation is also available by using the Virtual I/O Server capabilities.

Figure 4-82 depicts how to deallocate the selected Ethernet adapter from the Virtual I/O Server partition.

Partition	Properties: 10-59C72 (1)		?				
General	General Memory Processing Ethernet Physical Adapters						
The selected rows in the table of physical adapters represent the adapters currently assigned to the partition. All unselected rows represent adapters that have not been assigned. You can change the adapter assignments for the partition by deselecting existing items or selecting items that are not currently assigned.							
Select	Physical Location Code ^	Description	Bus ID				
	U78A0.001.DNWGPL0-P1-C1	Empty slot	516				
	U78A0.001.DNWGPL0-P1-C2	4Gb FC PCI Express Adapter (df1000fe) [+] View Children	517				
	U78A0.001.DNWGPL0-P1-C3	8Gb PCI Express Dual Port FC Adapter (df1000f114108a03) [+] View Children	519				
	U78A0.001.DNWGPL0-P1-C4	2-Port 10/100/1000 Base-TX PCI-X Adapter (14108902) [+] View Children	514				
	U78A0.001.DNWGPL0-P1-C5	4-Port 10/100/1000 Base-TX PCI-X Adapter (14101103) [+] View Children	515				
	U78A0.001.DNWGPL0-P1- C10	PCI Express x1 Auxiliary Cache Adapter [+] View Children	518				
	U78A0.001.DNWGPL0-P1-T3	USB Enhanced Host Controller (3310e000) [+] View Children	513				
N	U78A0.001.DNWGPL0-P1-T9	PCI-X266 Planar 3Gb SAS RAID Adapter [+] View Children	512				
Click	Click here to deallocate the adapter.						
OK Cancel							

Figure 4-82 Virtual I/O Server Partition Properties: Physical Adapters tab

Figure 4-83 shows how to allocate an adapter in the Physical Adapters tab of the Partition Properties panel.

Partition Properties: Ipar2_server2 (4)							
General Memory Processing Et	hernet Storage Optical/Tape Devices Physical Ada	pters					
The selected rows in the table of physical adapters represent the adapters currently assigned to the partition. All unselected rows represent adapters that have not been assigned. This partition might not support modifying adapter assignments while running since the capabilities are unknown. You can change the adapter assignments for the partition by deselecting existing items or selecting items that are not currently assigned: however, it is recommended that you first retrieve the capabilities by selecting the Retrieve Capabilities button on the General tab. Selection assistant: All Select Deselect							
Select <u>Physical Location Code</u> ^	Description	Bus ID					
U78A0.001.DNWGPL0-P1-C5	4-Port 10/100/1000 Base-TX PCI-X Adapter (14101103) 5						
Click here to allocate the adapter.							
OK Cancel							

Figure 4-83 Client Partitions Properties: Physical Adapters tab

### 4.9.1 Ethernet bridging

Under **I/O Adapter Management** in the navigation area, which is shown in Figure 4-84, click **View/Modify Virtual Ethernet**. In the work area, the Virtual Ethernet panel shows what partitions are connected to the four available networks. Go to the **Virtual Ethernet Bridge** tab to configure bridging, as shown in Figure 4-84. For each virtual Ethernet, you can select one physical device. Use the drop-down menu to select the **Physical Adapter** and click **Apply** to create the bridging device.

**IP address of a physical adapter:** If the physical adapter that is selected for bridging is already configured with an IP address by using the CLI, all connections to that address are reset.

Integrated Virtualization Manager				IIX.
Welcome padmin : vios2				Edit my profile   Help   Log out
Partition Management	View/Modify Virtual	Ethernet		?
<u>View/Modify Partitions</u> <u>View/Modify System Properties</u> <u>View/Modify Shared Memory Pool</u>	Virtual Ethernet	Virtual Ethernet Bridge		
I/O Adapter Management	I he operation	n completed successfully.		
View/Modify Host Ethernet Adapters     View/Modify Virtual Ethernet     View/Modify Physical Adapters     View Virtual Fibre Channel Virtual Storage Management     View/Modify Virtual Storage	A physical network by any partition on the b given virtual Ethernet traffic on the virtual E	ridge provides a specific virt oridged virtual Ethernet to at t, you may choose the physi Ethernet is restricted to men	ual Ethernet acce ccess the external cal adapter to wh ber partitions.	ss to a physical Ethernet device, thereby allowing network via the physical Ethernet device. For a ich to bridge. If a virtual Ethernet is not bridged,
IVM Management	Virtual Ethernet ID	Physical Adap	ter	
<u>View/Modify User Accounts</u> <u>View/Modify TCP/IP Settings</u> <u>Guided Setup</u> Enter PowerVM Edition Key	1 2	ent0 (U78A0.001.DNWGPL None	0-P1-C4-T1) 🗸	
System Plan Management	3	None	~	
<u>Manage System Plans</u>	4	None	*	
Service Management	L			
Electronic Service Agent     Service Focal Point     Manage Serviceable Events     Service Utilities     Create Serviceable Event     Manage Dumps     Collect VPD Information     Updates     Backup/Restore     Application Logs     Monitor Tasks     Hardware Inventory	Apply Reset			

Figure 4-84 View/Modify Virtual Ethernet: Virtual Ethernet Bridge creation

The web graphical interface hides the details of the network configuration. Example 4-11 describes the Virtual I/O Server configuration before the creation of the bridge. For each physical and virtual network adapter, an Ethernet device is configured. The IVM is connected to a physical network and four virtual network adapters are available.

Example 4-11 Virtual I/O Server Ethernet adapters with no bridging

\$ lsdev   grep	^en				
en0	Available	Standard	Ethernet	Network	Interface
en1	Defined	Standard	Ethernet	Network	Interface
en2	Defined	Standard	Ethernet	Network	Interface
en3	Defined	Standard	Ethernet	Network	Interface
en4	Defined	Standard	Ethernet	Network	Interface
en5	Defined	Standard	Ethernet	Network	Interface

en6		Defined	b	Standard	l Eth	nernet	Netwo	ork I	nterfa	ce			
en7		Defined	b	Standard	l Eth	nernet	Netwo	ork I	nterfa	ce			
en8		Defined	b	Standard	l Eth	nernet	Netwo	ork I	nterfa	ce			
en9		Defined	b	Standard	l Eth	nernet	Netwo	ork I	nterfa	ce			
en10		Defined	Ł	Standard	l Etł	nernet	Netwo	ork I	nterfa	ce			
en11		Defined	Ł	Standard	l Etł	nernet	Netwo	ork I	nterfa	ce			
en12		Defined	Ł	Standard	l Etł	nernet	Netwo	ork I	nterfa	ce			
en13		Defined	Ł	Standard	l Etł	nernet	Netwo	ork I	nterfa	ce			
ent0		Availat	ole	2-Port 1	0/10	0/1000	Base	e-TX	PCI-X	Adapter	(1	4108902)	
ent1		Availat	ole	2-Port 1	0/10	0/1000	Base	e-TX	PCI-X	Adapter	(1	4108902)	
ent2		Availat	ole	4-Port 1	0/10	0/1000	Base	e-TX	PCI-X	Adapter	(1	4101103)	
ent3		Availat	ole	4-Port 1	0/10	0/1000	Base	e-TX	PCI-X	Adapter	(1	4101103)	
ent4		Availat	ole	4-Port 1	0/10	0/1000	Base	e-TX	PCI-X	Adapter	(1	4101103)	
ent5		Availat	ole	4-Port 1	0/10	0/1000	Base	e-TX	PCI-X	Adapter	(1	4101103)	
ent6		Availat	ole	Logical	Host	: Ether	net l	Port	(lp-he	a)			
ent7		Availat	ole	Logical	Host	: Ether	net l	Port	(1p-he	a)			
ent8		Availat	ole	Logical	Host	: Ether	net l	Port	(1p-he	a)			
ent9		Availat	ole	Logical	Host	: Ether	net l	Port	(1p-he	a)			
ent10		Availat	ole	Virtual	I/0	Etherr	et Ad	dapte	r (1-1	an)			
ent11		Availat	ole	Virtual	I/0	Etherr	et Ad	dapte	r (1-1	an)			
ent12		Availat	ole	Virtual	I/0	Etherr	et Ad	dapte	r (1-1	an)			
ent13		Availat	ole	Virtual	I/0	Etherr	et Ad	dapte	r (1-1	an)			
\$ lsto	cpip												
Name	Mtu	Network	Addre	SS		Ipkt	s Ie	rrs	0pkt	s Oerrs	(	Coll	
en0	1500	link#2	0.9.6	b.6e.12.	4e	112871	.73	0	31474	34	3	0	
en0	1500	172.16.20	vios2			112871	.73	0	31474	34	3	0	
100	16896	link#1				7419	03	0	7419	03	0	0	
100	16896	127	loopb	ack		7419	03	0	7419	03	0	0	
100	16896	::1%1	-			7419	03	0	7419	03	0	0	

When a virtual Ethernet bridge is created, a new *Shared Ethernet adapter* (SEA) is defined, binding the physical device with the virtual device. If a network interface was configured on the physical adapter, the IP address is migrated to the new SEA.

Example 4-12 shows the result of bridging *virtual network 1* with the physical adapter *ent0* when the IVM is using the network interface *en0*. A new *ent2* SEA device is created, and the IP address of the IVM is migrated on the en2 interface. Because of the migration, all active network connections on en0 are reset.

Example 4-12 Shared Ethernet adapter configuration

\$ 1sdev   grep	^en				
en0	Available	Standard	Ethernet	Network	Interface
en1	Available	Standard	Ethernet	Network	Interface
en2	Available	Standard	Ethernet	Network	Interface
en3	Defined	Standard	Ethernet	Network	Interface
en4	Defined	Standard	Ethernet	Network	Interface
en5	Defined	Standard	Ethernet	Network	Interface
en6	Defined	Standard	Ethernet	Network	Interface
en7	Defined	Standard	Ethernet	Network	Interface
en8	Defined	Standard	Ethernet	Network	Interface
en9	Defined	Standard	Ethernet	Network	Interface
en10	Defined	Standard	Ethernet	Network	Interface
en11	Defined	Standard	Ethernet	Network	Interface

en12		Defined	ł	Standard	Eth	ernet Net	work I	nterface			
en13		Defined	ł	Standard	Eth	ernet Net	work I	nterface			
ent0		Availat	ole	2-Port 1	0/10	0/1000 Ba	ase-TX	PCI <b>-</b> X Ada	pter	(141089	02)
ent1		Availat	ole	2-Port 1	0/10	0/1000 Ba	ase-TX	PCI-X Ada	pter	(141089	02)
ent2		Availat	ole	Shared E	ther	net Adapt	ter				
ent6		Availat	ole	Logical	Host	Ethernet	: Port	(lp-hea)			
ent7		Availat	ole	Logical	Host	Ethernet	: Port	(lp-hea)			
ent8		Availat	ole	Logical	Host	Ethernet	: Port	(lp-hea)			
ent9		Availat	ole	Logical	Host	Ethernet	: Port	(lp-hea)			
ent10		Availab	ole	Virtual	I/0	Ethernet	Adapte	r (1-1an)			
ent11		Availab	ole	Virtual	I/0	Ethernet	Adapte	r (l-lan)			
ent12		Availab	ole	Virtual	I/0	Ethernet	Adapte	r (l-lan)			
ent13		Availab	ole	Virtual	I/0	Ethernet	Adapte	r (l-lan)			
\$ lsto	cpip										
N	MIL	Network	A . . .			To be a state		0.1.10		0.11	
Name	Mtu	Network	Addre	SS		Ipkts 1	lerrs	Upkts U	errs	COTT	
en2	1500	link#3	0.9.6	0.9.6b.6e.12.4e		9205	0	227	0	0	
en2	1500	172.16.20	vios2			9205	0	227	0	0	
100	16896	link#1				742305	0	742305	0	0	
100	16896	127	loopb	ack		742305	0	742305	0	0	
100	16896	::1%1				742305	0	742305	0	0	

### 4.9.2 Ethernet link aggregation

*Link aggregation* is a network technology that enables several Ethernet adapters to be joined to form a single virtual Ethernet device. This solution can be used to overcome the bandwidth limitation of a single network adapter and to avoid bottlenecks when sharing one network adapter among many client partitions.

The aggregated device also provides high-availability capabilities. If a physical adapter fails, the packets are automatically sent on the other available adapters without disruption to existing user connections. The adapter is automatically returned to service on the link aggregation when it recovers.

Link aggregation is an expert-level configuration and is not managed by the IVM GUI. The configuration is defined by using the Virtual I/O Server functions with the command line. However, the IVM can use the link aggregation for network configuration after it is defined.

To create the link aggregation, use the **mkvdev** command with the following syntax:

```
mkvdev -lnagg TargetAdapter ... [-attr Attribute=Value ...]
```

In the environment that is shown in Example 4-13, it is possible to aggregate the two physical Ethernet adapters *ent6* and *ent7*. A new virtual adapter *ent3* is created, as described in Example 4-13.

\$ 1sdev   grep	ent	
ent0	Available	2-Port 10/100/1000 Base-TX PCI-X Adapter (14108902)
ent1	Available	2-Port 10/100/1000 Base-TX PCI-X Adapter (14108902)
ent2	Available	Shared Ethernet Adapter
ent6	Available	Logical Host Ethernet Port (lp-hea)
ent7	Available	Logical Host Ethernet Port (lp-hea)
ent8	Available	Logical Host Ethernet Port (lp-hea)
ent9	Available	Logical Host Ethernet Port (lp-hea)

Example 4-13 Ethernet aggregation creation

```
ent10
                Available
                           Virtual I/O Ethernet Adapter (1-lan)
                Available Virtual I/O Ethernet Adapter (1-lan)
ent11
ent12
                Available Virtual I/O Ethernet Adapter (1-lan)
ent13
                Available Virtual I/O Ethernet Adapter (1-lan)
               Available Virtual Management Channel
ibmvmc0
$ mkvdev -lnagg ent6 ent7
ent3 Available
$ lsdev -dev ent3
                            description
name
                status
ent3
                Available
                           EtherChannel / IEEE 802.3ad Link Aggregation
$ lsdev -dev en3
name
                status
                            description
en3
                Defined
                            Standard Ethernet Network Interface
```

Aggregated devices can be used to define an SEA. The SEA must be created by using the **mkvdev** command with the following syntax:

```
mkvdev -sea TargetDevice -vadapter VirtualEthernetAdapter ...
-default DefaultVirtualEthernetAdapter
-defaultid SEADefaultPVID [-attr Attributes=Value ...]
[-migrate [-auto]]
```

Example 4-14 shows the bridging of *virtual network 4* with *SEA ent3*. The **mkvdev** command requires the identification of the virtual Ethernet adapter that is connected to virtual network 4.

The **lssyscfg** command with the parameter **lpar\_names** that is set to the Virtual I/O Server partition's name provides the list of virtual adapters that are defined for the Virtual I/O Server. The adapters are separated by commas, and their parameters are separated by slashes. The third parameter is the network number (4 in the example) and the first is the slot identifier (6 in the example).

The **1sdev** command with the *-vpd* flag provides the physical location of a virtual Ethernet adapter that contains the letter C followed by its slot number. In the example, ent13 is the virtual Ethernet adapter that is connected to network 4.

The created *ent10* adapter is the new SEA. Refer to Example 4-14.

Example 4-14 Creating an SEA adapter with link aggregation

```
$ lsdev -virtual | grep l-lan
ent10
                Available
                           Virtual I/O Ethernet Adapter (1-lan)
ent11
                Available
                            Virtual I/O Ethernet Adapter (1-lan)
ent12
                Available Virtual I/O Ethernet Adapter (1-lan)
ent13
                Available Virtual I/O Ethernet Adapter (1-lan)
$ lssyscfg -r prof --filter lpar names=10-59C72 -F virtual eth adapters
"3/0/1//1/0,4/0/2//1/0,5/0/3//1/0,6/0/4//1/0"
$ lsdev -dev ent10 -vpd | grep Location
       Hardware Location Code.....U9409.M50.1059C72-V1-C3-T1
    Physical Location: U9409.M50.1059C72-V1-C3-T1
$ lsdev -dev ent11 -vpd | grep Location
       Hardware Location Code.....U9409.M50.1059C72-V1-C4-T1
```
After the SEA is created by using the command line, it is available from the IVM panels. It is displayed as a device with no location codes inside the parenthesis because it uses a virtual device.

Figure 4-85 shows how IVM represents an SEA that was created by using an Ethernet link aggregation.

۱	View/Modify Virtual Ethernet								
ĺ	Virtual Ethernet	/irtual Ethernet Bridge							
	A physical network bridge provides a specific virtual Ethernet access to a physical Ethernet device, thereby allowing any partition on the bridged virtual Ethernet to access the external network via the physical Ethernet device. For a given virtual Ethernet, you may choose the physical adapter to which to bridge. If a virtual Ethernet is not bridged, traffic on the virtual Ethernet is restricted to member partitions.								
	Virtual Ethernet ID	Physical Adapter	Physical adapter						
1 ent0 (U78A0.001.DNWGPL0-P1-C4-T1) with location code									
2 None									
	3 None Link aggregation								
	4 with no location codes								
L									
	Apply Reset								

Figure 4-85 Virtual Ethernet bridge with a link aggregation device

As shown in Figure 4-85, the SEA can be removed by using the IVM and selecting **None** as the Physical Adapter for the virtual network. When you click **Apply**, the IVM removes all devices that are related to the SEA, but the link aggregation remains active.

## 4.9.3 Host Ethernet Adapter in IVM

You can use a *Host Ethernet Adapter (HEA*) as a network interface card for both the IVM partition and its clients.

To see whether an HEA is connected, which model it is (a two- or four-port HEA), and to see the status of all the ports in the IVM, complete the following process.

In the navigation panel, under the **I/O Adapter Management** section, **View/Modify Host Ethernet Adapters** provides the details of the HEA on that IVM, as shown in Figure 4-86.

Integrated Virtualization Manager						IIM.		
Welcome padmin : vios1					E	dit my profile   Help   Log out		
Partition Management	View/Modify Host Ethernet Adapters							
<u>View/Modify Partitions</u> <u>View/Modify System Properties</u> View/Modify Spared Mamory Bool	A Host Et perform a	al Ethernet ports. To						
I/O Adapter Management		Properties						
View/Modify Host Ethernet Adapters	Select	<u>Type</u>	Link State	Physical Location Code ^	Connected Partitions	Available Connections		
<u>View/Modify Virtual Ethernet</u> <u>View/Modify Physical Adapters</u> View Virtual Fibre Channel	0	1 G	Up	U78A0.001.DNWHZWR-P1-C6-T1	2	13		
Virtual Storage Management	0	1 G	Down	U78A0.001.DNWHZWR-P1-C6-T2	1	13		
<u>View/Modify Virtual Storage</u>	0	1 G	Down	U78A0.001.DNWHZWR-P1-C6-T3	1	14		
View/Modify User Accounts     View/Modify User Accounts	0	1 G	Down	U78A0.001.DNWHZWR-P1-C6-T4	1	14		
<u>Guided Setup</u> <u>Enter PowerVM Edition Key</u>								
Service Management								
Electronic Service Agent     Service Focal Point     Manage Serviceable Events     Service Utilities     Create Serviceable Event     Manage Dumps     Collect VPD Information     Updates     Backup/Restore     Backup/Restore     Monitor Tasks     Mander Inventory								

Figure 4-86 Host Ethernet Adapter details

# Assigning a Host Ethernet Adapter port to newly created LPAR

You can assign the HEA port to an LPAR at the creation time in the **Ethernet** window, by selecting the HEA port, as shown in Figure 4-87.

Create Partition: Ethernet Step 4 of 11									
Name Memory Processors Hethernet Storage Type Storage Virtual Fibre Channel	Etherne Specify Virtual E it does r Host Et	Ethernet Specify the desired Host Ethernet Adapter ports and specify virtual Ethernets for each virtual Ethernet adapte Virtual Ethernet requires a bridge to access the external network. Host Ethernet does not require a bridge, bu it does not support mobility. Host Ethernet Adapter Ports							
Optical/Tape Physical Adapters	Select	Туре	Link State	Physical Location Code ^	MAC Address	Available Connections			
Summary		1 G	Up	U78A0.001.DNWHZWR-P1-C6-T1	00215EAA7963	13			
		1 G	Down	U78A0.001.DNWHZWR-P1-C6-T2	00215EAA7964	13			
		1 G	Down	U78A0.001.DNWHZWR-P1-C6-T3	00215EAA7972	14			
		1 G	Down	U78A0.001.DNWHZWR-P1-C6-T4	00215EAA7973	14			
	Virtual Create	Ether Adapte	net Configu er	ration			-		
	Ac	dapter		Virtual Ethernet					
		1		1 💙					
		2		None 💙					
	1	1							
< Back Nex > Finish Cancel Help									

Figure 4-87 Assigning an HEA port to a new LPAR

You can see how many HEA ports are still available for each physical port in the **Available Connections** column, as shown in Figure 4-87.

#### Properties of the Host Ethernet Adapter physical port

You can see details of the *Per HEA physical port* for Physical Location Code, Speed, and Maximum transmission unit (MTU) by selecting the physical port in the **View/Modify Host Ethernet Adapters** panel and clicking **Properties**, as shown in Figure 4-88 and Figure 4-89 on page 132.

View/Mo	View/Modify Host Ethernet Adapters ?							
A Host Et perform a	A Host Ethernet Adapter (HEA) allows you to provide multiple partitions direct access to the physical Ethernet ports. To perform an action on a physical port, first select the port, and then select the task.							
Properties								
Select	Type	Link State	Physical Location Code ^	Connected Partitions	Available Connections			
۲	1 G	Up	U78A0.001.DNWHZWR-P1-C6-T1	2	13			
0	O         1 G         Down         U78A0.001.DNWHZWR-P1-C6-T2			1	13			
0	1 G	Down	U78A0.001.DNWHZWR-P1-C6-T3	1	14			
0	1 G	Down	U78A0.001.DNWHZWR-P1-C6-T4	1	14			

Figure 4-88 To check properties of the physical adapter

Host Ethernet Adapter Physical Port Properties: U78A0.001.DNWHZWR-P1-C6-T2 👥 🙎					
General Connected Partitions	<u>_</u>				
General					
Type:       1 G         Link state:       Down         Physical location code:       U78A0.001.DNWHZWR-P1-C6-T2         Allow virtual Ethernet bridging:           Performance					
Modify the settings by changing the o however, the changes to current valu	configured values. ( ues can take sever	Changes are applied imn al minutes to complete.	nediately,		
Property	Current	Configured			
Speed:	unknown	Auto 💌			
Maximum transmission unit (MTU):	Standard (1500)	Standard (1500) 💌			
Duplex:	Full	Auto			
Flow control enabled:					
OK Cancel					

Figure 4-89 HEA physical adapter properties

You can see the partitions which are sharing the *Per HEA physical port* and its MAC address in the **Connected Partitions** tab of the HEA properties page. Also, you can assign the available free ports to other partitions, as shown in Figure 4-90.

Host Ethernet Adapter Physical Port Properties: U78A0.001.DNWHZWR-P1-C6-T2 🛛 😰						
General	General Connected Partitions					
The selected rows in the table represent the partitions assigned to this physical port. You may change the assignments for the port by deselecting existing items or selecting items that are not currently assigned. Available connections: 14						
Select	<u>ID</u> ^	Name	MAC Address			
	1	vios1	00215EAA7961			
	2	lpar1_server1	Unassigned			
	3	lpar2_server1	Unassigned			
	4 Ipar3_server1 Unassigned					
ОК Са	OK Cancel					

Figure 4-90 Partitions served by an HEA port

# Using an HEA port for Ethernet bridging or Shared Ethernet Adapter

To use an HEA port for bridging client partitions with virtual Ethernet, you must assign a complete HEA physical port to the Virtual I/O Server; it cannot be shared by any other LPAR. To do this step, click **Allow virtual Ethernet bridging**, as shown in Figure 4-91.

Host Ethernet Adapter Physical Po	ort Properties: U7	8A0.001.DNWHZWR-F	Р1-С6-Т2 🛛 🖓		
General Connected Partitions	<u> </u>				
General					
Type:       1 G         Link state:       Down         Physical location code:       U78A0.001.DNWHZWR-P1-C6-T2         Allow virtual Ethernet bridging:       ✓         Performance       ✓					
Modify the settings by changing the of however, the changes to current val	configured values. ( ues can take severa Current	Changes are applied imr al minutes to complete. Configured	nediately,		
Speed:	unknown	Auto 💌			
Maximum transmission unit (MTU):	Standard (1500)	Standard (1500) 🔽			
Duplex:	Full	Auto			
Flow control enabled:					
Cancel					

Figure 4-91 Ethernet bridging using HEA

You can assign the HEA to the Virtual I/O Server and LPARs by using dynamic LPAR at run time. See details in the dynamic LPAR on HEA section, "Dynamic LPAR operation on HEA adapters using graphical interface" on page 104.

# 4.10 Storage management

Virtual disks and physical volumes can be assigned to any LPAR, one at a time. Storage allocation can be changed over time, and the content of the virtual storage is kept. When a virtual disk is created by using a logical volume, its size can also be increased.

Data protection against single disk failure is available by using *software mirroring*:

- Use on IVM to protect it, but not the managed systems' data.
- ► Use two virtual disks for each of the managed systems' LPARs to protect its data.

# 4.10.1 Virtual storage assignment to a partition

Unassigned virtual disks and physical volumes can be associated to a running partition. After the operation completes, the operating system of the LPAR must issue its device discovery procedure to detect the newly added disk.

Before you remove a physical disk or a virtual disk from a running partition, the operating system removes the corresponding disk device because it becomes unavailable.

On the web graphical interface, it is possible to remove a virtual disk or a physical volume from a running LPAR by using the **View/Modify Virtual Storage** menu. Click **Modify Virtual Disk Partition Assignment**. A warning sign opens which requires an additional confirmation. Figure 4-92 shows an example of this message.

Integrated Virtualization Manager	IBM.					
Welcome padmin : vios2	Edit my profile   Help   Log out					
Partition Management	Modify Virtual Disk Partition Assignment					
<u>View/Modify Partitions</u> <u>View/Modify System Properties</u> <u>View/Modify Shared Memory Pool</u>	Problems occurred while processing the data. A summary of all problems for this page are listed below. Additional details for each problem may be located next to the field causing the problem.					
I/O Adapter Management	A warning was generated requiring your attention before the requested task may be completed.					
<u>View/Modify Host Ethernet</u> Adapters View/Modify Virtual Ethernet View/Modify Physical Adapters View Virtual Fibre Channel	You can assign the listed virtual disks to a different partition. You can also remove their current partition assignment by selecting None for the New Partition value.					
Virtual Storage Management	* New partition: None					
<u>View/Modify Virtual Storage</u>	Name Current Assigned Partition Current Partition State					
IVM Management	vdlinux LPAR4_Linux (2) Running					
<u>View/Modify User Accounts</u> <u>View/Modify TCP/IP Settings</u> <u>Guided Setup</u> <u>Enter PowerVM Edition Key</u> System Plan Management <u>Manage System Plans</u>	<ul> <li>* Required field</li> <li>One or more of the selected devices is currently assigned to a running partition. It is recommended that you power off the partition prior to removing assigned devices. If you would like to proceed anyway, select the checkbox below, and select OK again.</li> <li>Force device removal from running partitions.</li> </ul>					
Service Management  Electronic Service Agent Service Focal Point	OK Cancel					
Manage Serviceable Events     Service Utilities     Create Serviceable Event     Manage Dumps     Collect VPD Information     Updates     Backup/Restore     Application Logs     Monitor Tasks     Hardware Inventory						

Figure 4-92 Forced removal of a virtual disk

# 4.10.2 Virtual disk extension

Several options are available to provide more disk space to an LPAR. The primary solution is to create a new virtual disk or select an entire physical disk and dynamically assign it to a partition. Because these operations can be done when the partition is running, it is preferred. After the partition's operating system issues its own device reconfiguration process, a new virtual disk is available for use. This disk can be used to extend existing data structures when using Linux with a logical volume manager or AIX 6.1 and 7.1.

When disk space is provided to a partition using a virtual disk, a secondary solution is to extend it using the IVM.

This operation can be executed when the partition is running, but the virtual disk must be taken offline to activate the change. Schedule the disk outages carefully so that they do not affect overall application availability. Consider the use of this solution when an existing operating system's volume must be increased in size and a new virtual SCSI disk cannot be added for this purpose; that is, when using Linux without a logical volume manager.

The following steps describe how to extend a virtual disk:

1. On the operating system, halt any activity on the disk to be extended. If stopping is not possible, shut down the partition.

 From the Virtual Storage Management menu in the IVM navigation area, click View/Modify Virtual Storage. From the work area, select the Virtual Disks tab. Then, Select the virtual disk that you want to extend, and choose Extend in the More Tasks drop-down menu. See Figure 4-93.

View/Modify Virtual Storage								
Virtual Disk	Virtual Disks Storage Pools Physical Volumes Optical/Tape							
To perform a task.	To perform an action on a virtual disk, first select the virtual disk or virtual disks, and then select the task.							
Select	Name ^	Storage Pool	Assigned	More Tasks Extend	e			
	vdAIXdata	rootvg (Default)	lpar2_server2	Delete	48			
	] vdlinux rootvg (Default) LPAR4_Linux (Z) ZU GD							

Figure 4-93 Extending virtual disks

3. Enter the disk space to be added and click **OK**. If the virtual disk is owned by a running partition, a warning message opens, as shown in Figure 4-94. You must then select the check box to force the expansion. The additional disk space is allocated to the virtual disk and it is available for the LPAR.

Extend Virtual Disk					
Problems occurred while processing the data. A summary of all problems for this page are listed below. Additional details for each problem may be located next to the field causing the problem. A warning was generated requiring your attention before the requested task may be completed.					
The virtual disk can be extended by the amount of size available in the storage pool. If you need to extend the virtual disk by more than the size available, use the Extend task on the Storage Pools tab under View / Modify Virtual Storage.					
Virtual disk name: vdAIXdata Storage pool: rootvg Available size: 70.25 GB (71936 MB) Current size: 10 GB (10240 MB) * Amount to extend: 2 GB ¥					
<ul> <li>* Required field</li> <li>The selected device is currently assigned to partition lpar2_server2 (4), which is a running partition. You will either need to restart the partition after extending the size, or reconfigure the device using the partition's operating system. If you would like to proceed anyway, select the checkbox below, and select OK again.</li> <li>Image: Force extend on running partition.</li> </ul>					
OK Cancel					

Figure 4-94 Forced expansion of a virtual disk

4. On the operating system, issue the appropriate procedure to recognize the new disk size.

# 4.10.3 IVM system disk mirroring

To prevent an IVM outage because of a system disk failure, make the rootvg storage pool of the Virtual I/O Server redundant. The default installation of IVM uses only one physical disk.

**Disk mirroring** on the IVM is an advanced feature that, at the time of writing, is not available on the web GUI. It can be configured by using the Virtual I/O Server capabilities on the CLI. Only system logical volumes can be mirrored.

**Mirrored logical volumes:** Mirrored logical volumes are supported as virtual disks. This procedure mirrors all logical volumes that are defined in the rootvg and must not run if rootvg contains virtual disks.

The following steps describe how to provide a mirrored configuration for the rootvg storage pool:

 Use the IVM to add a second disk of a similar size to rootvg. Under Virtual Storage Management in the navigation area, click View/Modify Virtual Storage, then go to the Physical Volumes tab. Select a disk of a similar size that is not assigned to any storage pool. From the More Tasks drop-down menu, click Add to storage pool, as shown in Figure 4-95.

Integrated Virtualization Manager							IIM.
Welcome padmin : vios2							Edit my profile   Help   Log out
Partition Management	View/Modify Virtual Storage						
<u>View/Modify Partitions</u>	Virtual D	isks St	orage Pools	Physical Volu	ımes 🛛 🕻	Optical/Tape	
<ul> <li><u>View/Modify System Properties</u></li> <li>View/Modify Shared Memory Pool</li> </ul>							
I/O Adapter Management	To perfo select th	orm an acti ne task.	on on a physica	l volume, first s	elect the phy	vsical volume or ph	iysical volumes, and then
<u>View/Modify Host Ethernet</u>		6	Modify partiti	ion assignment	More Ta	asks 💌	
<u>View/Modify Virtual Ethernet</u> <u>View/Modify Physical Adapters</u> View/Mitten Eiher Chappel	Select	Name ^	Storage Pool	Assigned Partition	More Ta Add to stor Remove fro	sks age pool om storage oool	l Location Code
Virtual Storage Management		<u>hdisk0</u>	rootvg (Default)		Properties		PL0-P2-D3
<u>View/Modify Virtual Storage</u>		<u>hdisk1</u>			136.73 GB	U78A0.001.DNW0	GPL0-P2-D4
IVM Management		hdisk2	Client_data		279.4 GB	U78A0.001.DNW0	GPL0-P2-D5
<u>View/Modify Oser Accounts</u> <u>View/Modify TCP/IP Settings</u> <u>Guided Setup</u>		hdisk3			10 GB	U78A0.001.DNW0 W201600A0B829	GPL0-P1-C3-T1- AC12-L100000000000
Enter PowerVM Edition Key System Plan Management		<u>hdisk4</u>		lpar2_server2 (4)	10 GB	U78A0.001.DNW0 W201600A0B829	GPL0-P1-C3-T1- AC12-L200000000000
<u>Manage System Plans</u>							
Service Management							
Electronic Service Agent     Service Focal Point     Manage Serviceable Events     Service Utilities     Create Serviceable Event     Manage Dumps     Collect VPD Information     Updates     Backup/Restore     Application Logs     Monitor Tasks     Hardware Inventory							

Figure 4-95 Adding a second disk in a storage pool for rootvg

2. In the Storage pool field, select **rootvg** and click **OK**.

Integrated Virtualization Manager	IBM.
Welcome padmin : vios2	Edit my profile   Help   Log out
Partition Management	Add To Storage Pool
<u>View/Modify Partitions</u> <u>View/Modify System Properties</u> <u>View/Modify Shared Memory Pool</u>	Select the storage pool to which to add the following physical volumes.  * Storage pool: rootvg (80.25 GB Available)
I/O Adapter Management	
View/Modify Host Ethernet Adapters     View/Modify Virtual Ethernet     View/Modify Physical Adapters     View Virtual Fibre Channel	Name     Size       hdisk1     136.73 GB
Virtual Storage Management	
<u>View/Modify Virtual Storage</u>	OK Cancel
IVM Management	
<u>View/Modify User Accounts</u> <u>View/Modify TCP/IP Settings</u> <u>Guided Setup</u> <u>Enter PowerVM Edition Key</u>	
System Plan Management	
<u>Manage System Plans</u>	
Service Management	
Electronic Service Agent     Service Focal Point     Manage Serviceable Events     Service Utilities     Create Serviceable Event     Manage Dumps     Collect VPD Information     Updates     Backup/Restore	
Application Logs     Monitor Tasks     Hardware Inventory	

Figure 4-96 Specify addition to storage pool

3. The actual mirroring is done by using the Virtual I/O Server command line. Log in with the padmin user ID and issue the **mirrorios** command, as shown in Example 4-15. The command asks for confirmation and causes a Virtual I/O Server reboot to activate the configuration after performing data mirroring.

Example 4-15 rootvg mirroring at command line

\$ lspv			
NAME	PVID	VG	STATUS
hdisk0	000fe401e81abecd	rootvg	active
hdisk1	000fe401e81abfd7	rootvg	active
hdisk2	00c1f170e937b535	Client_data	active
hdisk3	00f61aa6c6cbd642	None	
hdisk4	00f61aa6df2ffe71	None	
\$ mirrorios This command c Y	auses a reboot. Continue [y n]?		

# 4.11 N\_Port Identifier Virtualization (NPIV)

IVM supports virtual Fibre Channel with physical adapters that support NPIV. To create a virtual Fibre Channel adapter in IVM, a client LPAR is needed. You can either define during LPAR creation (see 4.4, "Create logical partitions" on page 79) or by adding the virtual Fibre Channel adapter to an existing LPAR. This section describes how to add and remove a virtual Fibre Channel adapter to an existing LPAR.

**Changes to a virtual Fibre Channel:** To make changes (such as add or remove operation) to a virtual Fibre Channel on an active logical partition, you must have a Dynamic Logical Partitioning-capable partition. Otherwise, you must shut down the LPAR to finish the changes.

# 4.11.1 Adding a new virtual Fibre Channel adapter

You can add a new virtual Fibre Channel adapter by using the IVM management interface. The following steps describe how to add a new virtual Fibre Channel adapter:

1. Go to **View/Modify Partitions** in the IVM management interface. **Select** the wanted LPAR link, as shown in Figure 4-97.

Integrated Virtualization Manager								1111		
Welcome padmin : vios1								E	dit my profile	Help
Partition Management	View/M	View/Modify Partitions								
<u>View/Modify Partitions</u> <u>View/Modify System Properties</u> <u>View/Modify Shared Memory Pool</u>	To perform an action on a partition, first select the partition or partitions, and then select the task. System Overview									
I/O Adapter Management	Total sy	stem m	nemory:		1	28 GB	Total proce	ssing units:	16	
<u>View/Modify Host Ethernet Adapters</u> <u>View/Modify Virtual Ethernet</u> <u>View/Modify Physical Adapters</u> <u>View Virtual Fibre Channel</u> <b>Virtual Storage Management</b>	Memory Reserve Availab System Partitic	v availa ed firmv le share attention on Deta	ble: vare memory: d memory pool on LED: <b>ails</b>	size:	3 3 6 Ir	9.75 GB .75 GB 4.53 GB nactive	Processing Processor p	units available: bool utilization:	13. 0.0	9 4 (0.2
<u>View/Modify Virtual Storage</u> TVM Management	R	r a	* Create I	Partition	Activate	Shutdowr	More 1	Tasks	~	
View/Modify User Accounts     View/Modify TCP/IP Settings     Guided Setup     Enter Bower/M Edition Key	Select		Name	<u>State</u>	Uptime	Memory	Processors	Entitled Processing Units	<u>Utilized</u> Processing <u>Units</u>	Refe
Service Management		1	<u>vios1</u>	Running	3.86 Hours	16 GB	16	1.6	0.03	
Electronic Service Agent     Service Focal Point		2	lpar1 server1	Running	1.08 Hours	2 GB	2	0.2	0.01	
<u>Manage Serviceable Events</u> <u>Service Utilities</u>		3	lpar2 server1	Not Activated		512 MB	1	0.1		0000
<u>Create Serviceable Event</u> <u>Manage Dumps</u> Collect VPD Information		4	lpar3 server1	Not Activated		1 GB	2	0.2		0000
Updates     Backup/Restore     Application Logs     Monitor Tasks     Hardware Inventory		1								

2. The Partition Properties window is started. Select the **Storage** tab, as depicted in Figure 4-98.

Partition Properties: lpar2_server1	l (3)
General Memory Processing	Ethernet Storage Optical/Tape Devices Physical Adapters
General	
Partition name: Ipar2_server1	
Partition ID: 3	
Environment: AIX or Linux	
State: Not Activated	
Attention LED: Inactive 🗸	
Settings	
Boot mode:	Normal
Keylock position:	Normal 🔽
Partition workload group participant:	
Automatically start when system starts	(s: 🔽
Dupamic Logical Partitioning (DLP	
	·AK)
Partition hostname or IP address:	
Partition communication state: Not	configured
Memory DLPAR capable: No	
Processing DLPAR capable: No	
I/O adapter DLPAR capable: No	
OK Cancel	

Figure 4-98 Partition Properties window

3. Figure 4-99 shows the Storage tab. Expand the **Virtual Fibre Channel** menu and click **Add** to create a new virtual Fibre Channel adapter.

Partition Properties: lpar2_server1 (3)           General         Memory         Processing         Ethernet         Storage         Optical/Tap	2 De Devices Physical Adapters
▶ Virtual Disks	
Physical Volumes	
Virtual Fibre Channel	
A virtual Fibre channel with physical adapters that support N_Port ID Virtualization to give multiple logical partitions direct access to storage area devices in a stora Worldwide Port Names table, you can add or remove a port name pair for this lot the physical port assignment for a port name pair that this partition is using.	on (NPIV) ports provides the ability ige area network (SAN). In the igical partition. You also can change
Add Remove	
Virtual Fibre Channel	Physical Port
OK Cancel	

Figure 4-99 Storage tab

4. Ensure that the check box for the new virtual Fibre Channel is selected. Using the **Physical Port** pull-down menu, choose the physical port that you want to associate with the new virtual Fibre Channel adapter, as shown in Figure 4-100. Click **OK** to make the configuration effective.

Partition Pr	operties: lpar2_server1 (3)		2					
General	Memory Processing Ethernet	Storage Optical/Tape De	vices 🔨 Physical Adapters 🔪					
► Virtual [	Disks							
Physical	Volumes							
🔻 🖪 Virtua	I Fibre Channel (Table changes pend	ling)						
A virtual Fib to give mult Worldwide P the physical	A virtual Fibre channel with physical adapters that support N_Port ID Virtualization (NPIV) ports provides the ability to give multiple logical partitions direct access to storage area devices in a storage area network (SAN). In the Worldwide Port Names table, you can add or remove a port name pair for this logical partition. You also can change the physical port assignment for a port name pair that this partition is using.							
Add R	emove							
Select	Worldwide Port Names	Physical	Port					
	Automatically generate	None	~					
None								
		fcs2 (U5802.001.0086848-P1-C3- fcs4 (U5802.001.0086848-P1-C4- fcs5 (U5802.001.0086848-P1-C4-	T1) T1) T2)					
OK Cance	1							

Figure 4-100 Adding a new virtual Fibre Channel adapter

5. The window in Figure 4-101 opens. It is closed when the configuration change is finished.

Performing Task - Please Wait					
The requested task is currently being performed. This may take some time to complete. You may wait, navigate to another task, or monitor the status of this task in the Monitor Tasks page.					
Monitor Task					

Figure 4-101 Performing Task panel

# 4.11.2 Removing a virtual Fibre Channel adapter

The following steps describe how to remove a virtual Fibre Channel adapter:

- 1. Click **View/Modify Partitions** in the Partition Management menu in the navigation area. In the work area, click the wanted LPAR link.
- 2. Select the **Storage** tab in the Partition Properties window, as shown in Figure 4-102.
- 3. Expand the **Virtual Fibre Channel** menu in the Storage tab. A list with available virtual Fibre Channel adapters is displayed, as shown in Figure 4-102. Select the check box of the virtual Fibre Channel adapter that you want to remove. Click **Remove**.

Partition Properties: lpar2_server1 (3)	?
General Memory Processing Ethernet Storage	Optical/Tape Devices Physical Adapters
Virtual Disks	
Physical Volumes	
▼ Virtual Fibre Channel	
A virtual Fibre channel with physical adapters that support N_Pr to give multiple logical partitions direct access to storage area Worldwide Port Names table, you can add or remove a port nai the physical port assignment for a port name pair that this part Add Remove	ort ID Virtualization (NPIV) ports provides the ability devices in a storage area network (SAN). In the me pair for this logical partition. You also can change ition is using.
Select Worldwide Port Names	Physical Port
CU50760303980087	fcs2 (U5802.001.0086848-P1-C3-T1)
OK Cancel	

Figure 4-102 Removing a virtual Fibre Channel adapter

4. A confirmation panel is displayed, as shown in Figure 4-103. Click OK to continue.

Partition Properties: lpar2_server1 (3)	?
General Memory Processing Ethernet Storage Optical/Tape Devices Physical Adapte	ers
▶ Virtual Disks	
Physical Volumes	
Virtual Fibre Channel	
A virtual Fibre channel with physical adapters that support N_Port ID Virtualization (NPIV) ports provides the a to give multiple logical partitions direct access to storage area devices in a storage area network (SAN). In the Worldwide Port Names table, you can add or remove a port name pair for this logical partition. You also can cl the physical port assignment for a port name pair that this partition is using.	bility ange
Remove Worldwide Port Names	
You are removing the worldwide port names for the partition connection. These names, which are associated with the physical port and the storage area network (SAN) are permanently deleted from the system and cannot be regenerated or reused.	
Click OK to continue.	
Cancel	
OK Cancel	

Figure 4-103 Confirmation window for removing a virtual Fibre Channel adapter

5. The window in Figure 4-104 is displayed. There is an exclamation mark near the Virtual Fibre Channel menu; this means that the configuration change is pending. Click **OK** to apply the changes.

Partition Properties: Ipar2	_server1 (3)				?
General Memory Pro	cessing Ethernet	Storage	Optical/Tap	e Devices	Physical Adapters
Virtual Disks					
Physical Volumes					
▼ 🖪 Virtual Fibre Channe	I (Table changes pendin	g)			
A virtual Fibre channel with to give multiple logical partit Worldwide Port Names table the physical port assignment	hysical adapters that su ions direct access to sto , you can add or remove : for a port name pair th	upport N_Port rage area dev e a port name at this partitio	ID Virtualization vices in a stora pair for this lo n is using.	on (NPIV) ports ge area networ ogical partition. Y	provides the ability k (SAN). In the You also can change
Add Remove					
Select	Worldwide Po	rt Names		Phys	sical Port
OK Cancel					

Figure 4-104 Applying changes to the LPAR configuration

6. A Performing Task window is shown, as depicted in Figure 4-101 on page 140. The window closes when the new configuration is applied.

# 4.11.3 Changing the physical port of an existing virtual Fibre Channel

You can change a physical port of an existing virtual Fibre Channel adapter without removing it. The following steps describe how to modify an existing virtual Fibre Channel adapter physical port's assignment:

- 1. Go to **View/Modify Partitions** in the IVM management interface. Click the wanted LPAR link.
- 2. Select the Storage tab in the Partition Properties window.
- 3. Expand the **Virtual Fibre Channel** menu in the Storage tab. A list with available virtual Fibre Channel adapters is displayed. Using the pull-down menu under the **Physical Port** column, choose the new physical port for the virtual Fibre Channel adapter that you want to change. See Figure 4-105.

Partition General	Properties: lpar2_server1 (3) Memory Processing Ethernet Storage	Optical/Tape Devices Physical Adapters
▶ Virtua	l Disks	
▶ Physic	cal Volumes	
▼ Virtua	l Fibre Channel	
A virtual F to give m Worldwide the physic	ibre channel with physical adapters that support N_Po ultiple logical partitions direct access to storage area o e Port Names table, you can add or remove a port nar al port assignment for a port name pair that this part	ort ID Virtualization (NPIV) ports provides the ability devices in a storage area network (SAN). In the me pair for this logical partition. You also can change ition is using.
Add	Remove	
Select	Worldwide Port Names	Physical Port
	C050760303980086; C050760303980087	fcs2 (U5802.001.0086848-P1-C3-T1) 🔽
		None
		fcs4 (U582.001.0086848-P1-C4-T1) fcs5 (U5802.001.0086848-P1-C4-T2)
OK Can	cel	- · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·

Figure 4-105 Changing the physical port for a virtual Fibre Channel adapter

4. There is an exclamation mark near the Virtual Fibre Channel menu in Figure 4-106. It means that the new configuration is pending. Click **OK** to apply the changes.

Partition I	Properties: lpar2_server1 (3)           Memory         Processing         Ethernet         Storage	2 Optical/Tape Devices Physical Adapters					
▶ Virtua	l Disks						
Physic	al Volumes						
v 🛙 Virt	ual Fibre Channel (Table changes pending)						
A virtual F to give m Worldwide change th	ibre channel with physical adapters that support N_P ultiple logical partitions direct access to storage area Port Names table, you can add or remove a port na e physical port assignment for a port name pair that	ort ID Virtualization (NPIV) ports provides the ability devices in a storage area network (SAN). In the me pair for this logical partition. You also can this partition is using.					
Add	Remove						
Select	Worldwide Port Names	Physical Port					
	C050760303980086; C050760303980087 fcs4 (U5802.001.0086848-P1-C4-T1) 🗸						
:)[	<u> </u>						
OK Can	OK Cancel						

Figure 4-106 Applying a new physical port for a virtual Fibre Channel adapter

5. A Performing Task window is shown, as depicted in Figure 4-101 on page 140. The window closes when the new configuration is applied.

# 4.12 Securing the Virtual I/O Server

The *Virtual I/O Server* provides extra security features that enable you to control access to the virtual environment and ensure the security of your system. The following topics describe the available security features and provide tips for ensuring a secure environment for your Virtual I/O Server setup.

#### Introduction to Virtual I/O Server security

You can set security options that provide tighter security controls over your Virtual I/O Server environment. These options enable you to select a level of system security hardening and specify settings that are allowable within that level. The Virtual I/O Server security feature also enables you to control network traffic by enabling the Virtual I/O Server firewall. You can configure these options by using the **viosecure** command.

The **viosecure** command activates, deactivates, and displays security hardening rules. By default, none of the security hardening features are activated after installation. Upon running the **viosecure** command, the command guides the user through the proper security settings, which range from High to Medium to Low. After this initial selection, a menu is displayed which itemizes the security configuration options that are associated with the selected security level in sets of 10. These options can be accepted in whole, individually toggled off or on, or ignored. After any changes, **viosecure** continues to apply the security settings to the computer system.

The **viosecure** command also configures, unconfigures, and displays network firewall settings. Using the **viosecure** command, you can activate and deactivate specific ports and specify the interface and IP address from which connections are allowed.

For more information about this command, see the **viosecure** command in the Virtual I/O Server Commands Reference. The following sections provide an overview of the Virtual I/O Server features.

#### System security hardening

The *system security hardening* feature protects all elements of a system by tightening security or implementing a higher level of security. Although hundreds of security configurations are possible with the Virtual I/O Server security settings, you can easily implement security controls by specifying a high, medium, or low security level. Configuration of the Virtual I/O Server system security hardening is described in one of the next sections.

The system security hardening features provided by the Virtual I/O Server enable you to specify the following values:

- Password policy settings
- The usrck, pwdck, grpck, and sysck actions
- Default file creation settings
- System crontab settings

Configuring a system at too high of a security level might deny services that are needed. For example, the **telnet** and **rlogin** commands are disabled for high-level security because the login password is sent over the network unencrypted. If a system is configured at a too low security level, the system might be vulnerable to security threats. Because each enterprise has its own unique set of security requirements, the predefined High, Medium, and Low security configuration settings are best suited as a starting point for security configuration rather than an exact match for security requirements. As you become more familiar with the security settings, you can make adjustments by choosing the hardening rules that you want to apply. You can get information about the hardening rules by running the **man** command.

#### Virtual I/O Server firewall

The Virtual I/O Server firewall enables you to enforce limitations on IP activity in your virtual environment. With this feature, you can specify which ports and network services are allowed access to the Virtual I/O Server system. For example, if you need to restrict login activity from an unauthorized port, you can specify the port name or number and specify *deny* to remove it from the Allow list. You can also restrict a specific IP address.

Before configuring firewall settings, you must first enable the Virtual I/O Server firewall. The following topic describes this action.

#### **Configuring firewall settings**

Enable the Virtual I/O Server (VIOS) firewall to control IP activity.

The Virtual I/O Server firewall is not enabled by default. To enable the firewall, you must turn it on by using the **viosecure** command with the -firewall option. When you enable it, the default setting is activated, which allows access for the following IP services:

- ► ftp
- ▶ ftp-data
- ► dns
- ► ssh
- ► web
- https
- ► rmc
- wbem-rmi
- wbem-http
- wbem-https

**telnet command:** The **telnet** command is disabled when the firewall is turned on. Therefore, if you are using Telnet to set the security settings, you lose your connection or session.

**Firewall settings:** The firewall settings are in the **viosecure.ct1** file in the /home/ios/security directory. You can use the -force option to enable the standard firewall default ports. For more about the force option, see the **viosecure** command description.

You can use the default setting or configure the firewall settings to meet the needs of your environment by specifying which ports or port services to allow. You can also turn off the firewall to deactivate the settings.

Use the following tasks at the Virtual I/O Server command line to configure the Virtual I/O Server firewall settings:

1. Enable the Virtual I/O Server firewall by issuing the following command:

viosecure -firewall on -reload

2. Specify the ports to allow or deny, by using the following command:

```
viosecure -firewall allow | deny -port number
```

3. View the current firewall settings by issuing the following command:

viosecure -firewall view

4. If you want to disable the firewall configuration, issue the following command:

viosecure -firewall off

For more about any viosecure command option, see the viosecure command description.

#### Configuring Virtual I/O Server system security hardening

Set the security level to specify the security hardening rules for your Virtual I/O Server (VIOS) system.

To implement system security hardening rules, you can use the **viosecure** command to specify a security level of High, Medium, or Low. A default set of rules is defined for each level. You can also set a level of default, which returns the system to the system standard settings and removes any level settings that are applied.

The low-level security settings are a subset of the medium-level security settings, which are a subset of the high-level security settings. Therefore, the High level is the most restrictive and provides the greatest level of control. You can apply all of the rules for a specified level or select which rules to activate for your environment. By default, no Virtual I/O Server security levels are set; you must run the **viosecure** command to enable the settings.

Use the following tasks to configure the system security settings of the Virtual I/O Server.

#### Setting a security level

To set a Virtual I/O Server security level of High, Medium, or Low, use the **viosecure** -level command, as in the following example:

viosecure -level low -apply

#### Changing the settings in a security level

To set a Virtual I/O Server security level in which you specify which hardening rules to apply for the setting, run the **viosecure** command interactively, as in the following example:

- 1. At the Virtual I/O Server command line, type **viosecure -level high**. All security level options (hardening rules) at that level are displayed, 10 at a time. (Pressing Enter displays the next set in the sequence.)
- 2. Review the displayed options and make your selection by entering the numbers that you want to apply, separated by a comma. Type ALL to apply all of the options, or type NONE to apply none of the options.
- 3. Press Enter to display the next set of options, and continue entering your selections.

To exit the command without making any changes, enter q.

#### Viewing the current security setting

To display the current Virtual I/O Server security level setting, use the **viosecure** command with the -view flag, as in the following example:

viosecure -view

#### Removing security level settings

To unset any previously set system security levels and return the system to the standard system settings, issue the following command:

viosecure -level default

For more information about using the **viosecure** command, see the **viosecure** command description.

# 4.13 Connecting to the Virtual I/O Server using OpenSSH

This topic describes how to set up remote connections to the Virtual I/O Server by using Open Secure Shell (OpenSSH) secure connections.

#### Setting up Secure Shell authorization for a non-prompted connection

Use the following steps to set up Secure Shell (SSH) authorization for a non-prompted connection:

1. If the id\_dsa files do not exist on your workstation, create them using the **ssh-keygen** command (press Enter for passphrases), as shown in Example 4-16.

Example 4-16 Create the id\_dsa files on your workstation

```
nimres2:/ # ssh-keygen -t dsa
Generating public/private dsa key pair.
Enter file in which to save the key (//.ssh/id_dsa):
Enter passphrase (empty for no passphrase):
```

2. Verify that the keys are generated on your workstation (Example 4-17).

Example 4-17 Verify successful creation of id\_dsa files

```
nimres2:/.ssh # ls -1
total 16
-rw----- 1 root system 668 Sep 21 11:03 id_dsa
-rw-r--r-- 1 root system 602 Sep 21 11:03 id_dsa.pub
nimres2:/.ssh #
```

 Now, log in to the IVM through SSH. There is not yet a known\_hosts file that is created, which is done during the first SSH login (Example 4-18).

Example 4-18 First SSH login toward IVM - known\_hosts file creation

```
nimres2:/.ssh # ssh padmin@vios2
The authenticity of host 'vios2 (172.16.20.201)' can't be established.
RSA key fingerprint is 30:aa:f2:c2:30:4f:ad:6c:05:a8:91:35:b1:9b:6d:0a.
Are you sure you want to continue connecting (yes/no)? yes
Warning: Permanently added 'vios2' (RSA) to the list of known hosts.
Last unsuccessful login: Thu Sep 20 16:47:41 CDT 2012 on ssh from 172.16.254.22
Last login: Fri Sep 21 09:10:56 CDT 2012 on /dev/pts/2 from 172.16.254.14
$
Connection to vios2 closed.
nimres2:/.ssh # ls -l
total 24
-rw-----
                                        668 Sep 21 11:03 id_dsa
             1 root
                        system
-rw-r--r--
           1 root
                                        602 Sep 21 11:03 id dsa.pub
                        system
-rw-r--r--
           1 root
                        system
                                        401 Sep 21 11:06 known hosts
nimres2:/.ssh #
```

The *known* hosts file is created.

4. The next step is to copy the authorized\_keys2 file using the scp command. (Example 4-19).

Example 4-19 Transfer of authorized\_keys2 file

```
nimres2:/.ssh # scp padmin@vios2:/home/padmin/.ssh/authorized_keys2 ~/.ssh
padmin@vios2's password:
authorized_keys2 100% 394 0.4KB/s 00:00
nimres2:/.ssh #
```

 Add the contents of your local SSH public key (id\_dsa.pub) to the authorized\_keys2 file (Example 4-20).

Example 4-20 Add contents of local SSH public key to authorized\_keys2 file

```
nimres2:/.ssh # cat id_dsa.pub >> authorized_keys2
nimres2:/.ssh #
```

6. Verify the successful addition of the public key by comparing the size of the authorized keys file to the id\_dsa.pub file (Example 4-21).

Example 4-21 Compare addition of public key

nimres2:/.ssh	#	ls -1						
LULUI JZ								
-rw-rr	1	root	system	996	Sep	21	11:13	authorized_keys2
-rw	1	root	system	668	Sep	21	11:03	id_dsa
-rw-rr	1	root	system	602	Sep	21	11:03	id_dsa.pub
-rw-rr	1	root	system	401	Sep	21	11:06	known_hosts

 Transfer the authorized key file back to the IVM into the directory /home/padmin/.ssh (Example 4-22).

Example 4-22 File Transfer Protocol (FTP) of the authorized key back to IVM

<pre>nimres2:/.ssh # scp ~/.ssh/authorized_keys2 p</pre>	oadmin@vios2:	/home,	/padmin/.ssh	
padmin@vios2's password:				
authorized_keys2	100%	996	1.0KB/s	00:00
nimres2:/.ssh #				

 Verify that the key can be read by the SSH daemon on the IVM and test the connection by typing the ioslevel command (Example 4-23).

Example 4-23 Test the configuration

```
nimres2:/.ssh # ssh padmin@vios2
Last unsuccessful login: Thu Sep 20 16:47:41 CDT 2012 on ssh from 172.16.254.22
Last login: Fri Sep 21 10:15:39 CDT 2012 on ssh from 172.16.20.41
$ ioslevel
2.2.1.4
$
```

After you establish these secure remote connections, you can run several commands. The following examples show some of the commands that you can run:

ssh padmin@vios2

This command provides an interactive login (IP address is also possible).

▶ ssh -t padmin@vios2 ioscli mkvt -id 2

This command enables us to get a console directly to a client LPAR with id 2.

#### ssh padmin@vios2 lssyscfg -r sys

Example 4-24 shows the output of the **lssyscfg** command.

Example 4-24 Output of the Issyscfg command

nimres2:/ # ssh padmin@vios2 lssyscfg -r sys name=M50\_1\_9409-M50-1059C72,type\_model=9409-M50,serial\_num=1059C72,"ipaddr=172.16.20.209 ,fe80:0000:0000:0000:0214:5eff:fef0:28d6",state=Operating,sys\_time=06/08/72 20:03:09,power\_off\_policy=0,active\_lpar\_mobility\_capable=1,inactive\_lpar\_mobility\_capabl e=1,cod\_mem\_capable=0,cod\_proc\_capable=1,vet\_activation\_capable=1,os400\_capable=1,active \_lpar\_share\_idle\_procs\_capable=1,micro\_lpar\_capable=1,dlpar\_mem\_capable=1,assign\_phys\_io \_capable=1,lhea\_capable=1,active\_mem\_sharing\_capable=1,max\_lpars=40,max\_power\_ctrl\_lpars =1,service\_lpar\_id=1,service\_lpar\_name=10-59C72,mfg\_default\_config=0,curr\_configured\_max \_lpars=96,pend\_configured\_max\_lpars=96,config\_version=010003000000000,pend\_lpar\_config\_ state=enabled,lpar\_avail\_priority\_capable=1,lpar\_proc\_compat\_mode\_capable=1,"lpar\_proc\_c ompat\_modes=default,POWER6\_enhanced,POWER6",max\_vios\_lpar\_id=1,virtual\_io\_server\_capable =0,virtual\_fc\_capable=1 nimres2:/ #

# 5

# Maintain

This chapter provides information about maintenance operations on the IBM Integrated Virtualization Manager (IVM).

This chapter describes the following topics:

- ► IVM backup and restore
- Logical partition backup and restore
- ► IVM upgrade
- Managed system firmware update
- ► IVM migration
- Command logging
- Integration with IBM Director
- ► Reporting hardware and software errors to IBM automatically

# 5.1 IVM maintenance

You can use the IVM to perform operations such as backup, restore, or upgrade. Some operations are available by using the *graphical user interface* (*GUI*), the *command-line interface* (*CLI*), or the *Advanced System Management Interface* (*ASMI*) menus.

# 5.1.1 Backup and restore of the logical partition definitions

*Logical partition* (*LPAR*) configuration information can be backed up to a file. This file is used to restore information if required and can also be exported to another system.

The following steps describe how to back up the LPAR configuration:

- 1. Under the Service Management menu in the navigation area, click **Backup/Restore**.
- 2. Select Generate Backup in the work area, as shown in Figure 5-1.

Backup/Restore 2
Partition Configuration Backup/Restore Management Partition Backup/Restore File and Virtual Media Backup/Restore
You can download an existing backup of the partition configuration, generate a new backup, upload a saved backup, or restore the existing backup.
Partition Configuration Backup File
No current backup file. Select Generate Backup to create a backup file, or Upload Backup File to upload an existing file.
Generate Backup Restore Partition Configuration
Upload Partition Configuration Backup File
Partition configuration backup file to upload: Browse
Upload Backup File

Figure 5-1 Partition Configuration Backup/Restore

A file named *profile.bak* is generated and stored under the user's home directory. In the work area, you can select this file name and save it to a disk. There is only one unique backup file at a time, and a new backup file replaces an existing one, as shown in Figure 5-2.

Backup/Restore 2
Partition Configuration Backup/Restore Management Partition Backup/Restore File and Virtual Media Backup/Restore
The operation completed successfully.
You can download an existing backup of the partition configuration, generate a new backup, upload a saved backup, or restore the existing backup.
Backup File Backup Time
/home/padmin/profile.bak 9/20/12 6:17:40 PM
Generate Backup Restore Partition Configuration
Upload Partition Configuration Backup File
Partition configuration backup file to upload:
Browse
Upload Backup File

Figure 5-2 Profile backup stored in the /home directory

The backup file contains the LPAR's configuration, such as processors, memory, network, physical adapters, Host Ethernet Adapter (HEA), virtual SCSI, and virtual Fibre Channel. Information about virtual disks or physical disks is not included in the backup file; for this data, you must take a **viosbr** backup. Refer to section 5.1.4, "Virtual I/O Server configuration backup/restore" on page 156.

To perform a restore operation, the system must not have any LPAR configuration defined. Click **Restore Partition Configuration** to restore the last backed-up file. If you want to restore a backup file that is stored on your disk, follow these steps:

- 1. Click **Browse** and select the file.
- 2. Click Upload Backup File. The uploaded file replaces the existing backup file.
- Click Restore Partition Configuration to restore the uploaded backup file. See details in Figure 5-3.

Backup/Restore			2
Partition Configuration Ba	ckup/Restore M	Management Partition Backup/Restore $ imes$ File and Virtual Media Back	cup/Restore
You can download an existin existing backup.	g backup of the partitio	on configuration, generate a new backup, upload a saved backup, or	restore the
Partition Configuration B	ackup File		
Backup File	Backup Time		
/home/padmin/profile.bak	9/20/12 4:53:36 PM		
Generate Backup Restore	Partitic Configuration	n	
Partition configuration back	up file to upload:	Browse	
Upload Backup File			

Figure 5-3 Restoring the profile

You can also back up and restore LPAR configuration information from the CLI. Use the **bkprofdata** command to back up the configuration information and the **rstprofdata** command to restore it. See the Virtual I/O Server and Integrated Virtualization Manager command descriptions on the Systems Hardware information web page:

http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/eserver/v1r3s/index.jsp?topic=/iphb1/iphb
1\_vios\_commandslist.htm

# 5.1.2 Backup and restore of the IVM operating system

The only way to back up the IVM operating system is with the **backupios** command. No operating system backup operation is available within the GUI. This command creates a bootable image that includes the IVM partition's root volume group (rootvg). It can also contain the storage pool structure, depending on the flags used.

ſ	Backup/Restore 2
	Partition Configuration Backup/Restore Management Partition Backup/Restore File and Virtual Media Backup/Restore
	The management partition can be backed up using the <b>backupios</b> command in a terminal session. The backup process may take some time, particularly if you choose to backup the user created volume group (storage pool) structure.
	This backup will only save the data for the management partition, and will not save data on virtual disks or physical volumes that are assigned to managed partitions.
	To restore the management partition, you should install the operating system using the bootable media created by the backup process.

Figure 5-4 Backup/Restore of the Management Partition

**LPAR backup operation:** The backup operation does not save the data that is contained in virtual disks or physical volumes that are assigned to the LPARs.

The backup can use one of the following media types:

- ► File
- Tape
- CD-R
- DVD-RAM

To restore the management partition, install the operating system by using the bootable media that is created by the backup process.

# 5.1.3 Backup and restore of the particular set of files in /home/padmin

You can take backup of a particular set of files to a tape that is present in **/home/padmin** or the complete directory and restore them; see Figure 5-5.

Partition Configuration Backup/Restore       Management Partition Backup/Restore       File and Virtual Media Backup/Restore            • Backup to Tape             • Backup to Tape             You can use the backup command in a terminal window to back up selected files from the managed system to a tape device. After         you select files to back up, click Generate Command to view and copy the command needed to perform the file backup. Open a         terminal session, paste the command in the session window, and run it to backup the selected files.             We lead to the command in the session window, and run it to backup the selected files.           Type             We lead to the command           Select           Type             /home/padmin/* [+1 Show Files           Directory           Directory             You can use the restore command in a terminal window to restore files from a tape device to the managed system. After you select         files to restore, click Generate Command to view and copy the command needed to perform the file restore. Open a terminal         session, paste the command in a terminal window to restore the selected files.             You can use the restore command in a terminal window to restore the selected files.             Tape device: rmt0         List Tape Contents             We can use the command             Select	Backup/Restore				2
• Backup to Tape              You can use the backup command in a terminal window to back up selected files from the managed system to a tape device. After         you select files to back up, click Generate Command to view and copy the command needed to perform the file backup. Open a         terminal session, paste the command in the session window, and run it to backup the selected files.                    Generate Command                 Select               Name                 /home/padmin/* [+1 Show Files               Directory                 You can use the restore command in a terminal window to restore files from a tape device to the managed system. After you select         files to restore, click Generate Command to view and copy the command needed to perform the file restore. Open a terminal         session, paste the command to view and copy the command needed to perform the file restore. Open a terminal         session, paste the command to view and run it to restore the selected files.             Tape device: rmt0         List Tape Contents             Select         Name             Select	Partition Configuratio	n Backup/Restore 🗌 Mana	agement Partition Backup/Restore	File and Virtual M	1edia Backup/Restore
Image: Select	▼ Backup to Tape You can use the bac you select files to ba terminal session, par	kup command in a terminal ick up, click Generate Comi ste the command in the ses	window to back up selected files from mand to view and copy the command sion window, and run it to backup the	the managed syste needed to perform t selected files.	m to a tape device. After he file backup. Open a
Select       Name       Type         /home/padmin/* [+] Show Files       Directory         • Restore from Tape         You can use the restore command in a terminal window to restore files from a tape device to the managed system. After you select files to restore, click Generate Command to view and copy the command needed to perform the file restore. Open a terminal session, paste the command in the session window, and run it to restore the selected files.         Tape device: rmt0       List Tape Contents         Image: Command Select       Name         Type	667	Generate Command			
/home/padmin/* [+] Show Files       Directory         • Restore from Tape       • Restore from Tape         You can use the restore command in a terminal window to restore files from a tape device to the managed system. After you select files to restore, click Generate Command to view and copy the command needed to perform the file restore. Open a terminal session, paste the command in the session window, and run it to restore the selected files.         Tape device: rmt0       List Tape Contents         Image: Command Select       Name         Type	Select		Name		Туре
• Restore from Tape         You can use the restore command in a terminal window to restore files from a tape device to the managed system. After you select files to restore, click Generate Command to view and copy the command needed to perform the file restore. Open a terminal session, paste the command in the session window, and run it to restore the selected files.         Tape device: rmt0       List Tape Contents         Image: Command Command       Select         Name       Type		/home/padmin/* [+] Show	v Files		Directory
Select Name Type	Restore from Ta You can use the rest files to restore, click session, paste the co Tape device: rmt0     E	ope ore command in a terminal Generate Command to vie ommand in the session wind List Tape Contents erate Command	window to restore files from a tape do w and copy the command needed to p low, and run it to restore the selected	evice to the manage erform the file resto files.	d system. After you select ore. Open a terminal
		Select	Name		Туре

Figure 5-5 Backup of /home/padmin to tape

# 5.1.4 Virtual I/O Server configuration backup/restore

With **viosbr**, you can take backup of a Virtual I/O Server configuration. Examples of this type of setup include AMS, SEA, virtual SCSI mappings for virtual disk, NPIV, and SSP cluster (across all the nodes/Virtual I/O Server). You can restore these configurations completely if the VIO is unavailable or upgraded to a new level. Or, when there is no need for any of these features, just delete them and when needed, you can restore them using **viosbr**.

You can also specify **viosbr** to take backups at regular intervals, such as daily, weekly, and monthly. Then, the **viosbr** automatically takes the backup of the Virtual I/O Server with the current configuration. Therefore, there is no need to be concerned about the changes that occurred on the server.

Example 5-1 on page 157 shows the usage of viosbr.

Example 5-1 viosbr usage

```
viosbr -h
Usage: viosbr -backup -file FileName [-frequency daily|weekly|monthly [-numfiles fileCount]]
      viosbr -backup -clustername clusterName -file FileName [-frequency daily|weekly|monthly
[-numfiles fileCount]]
      viosbr -nobackup
      viosbr -view -file FileName [-type devType] [-detail | -mapping]
      viosbr -view -file FileName -clustername clusterName [-type devType][-detail | -mapping]
      viosbr -view -list [UserDir]
      viosbr -restore -file FileName [-validate | -inter] [-type devType]
      viosbr -restore -file FileName [-type devType] [-force]
      viosbr -restore -file FileName -skipcluster
      viosbr -restore -clustername clusterName -file FileName -subfile NodeFile [-validate | -inter |
-force][-type devType][-skipcluster]
      viosbr -restore -clustername clusterName -file FileName -repopys list of disks [-validate ]
-inter | -force][-type devType][-currentdb]
      viosbr -restore -clustername clusterName -file FileName -subfile NodeFile -xmlvtds
      viosbr -recoverdb -clustername clusterName [ -file FileName ]
      viosbr -migrate -file FileName
      Backup virtual & logical configurations, lists configurations
      and restores configurations.
       -backup
                        Takes backup of VIOS configuration. A compressed
                        file with extension .tar.gz will be created.
       -clustername
                        Specifies name of cluster to generate, display, or restore configuration file.
       -currentdb
                        Restores the cluster without restoring database from the backup.
       -detail
                        Displays all the devices from the backup file with all
                        their attribute values.
       -file
                        Name of the backup configuration file. Either absolute path or
                        relative path can be given.
       -force
                        In non interactive mode, restoration of a device that has
                        not been successfully validated, will be tried. This option
                        cannot be used in combination with -inter or -validate.
                        Frequency of the backup to run automatically.
       -frequency
       -inter
                        Interactively deploy each device with user confirmation.
       -list
                        Lists the backup files either from default
                        directory or from user given directory.
                        Displays mapping information for SPs, FBSP, repositories,
       -mapping
                        etherchannel, SEA, vscsi adapters, vfc adapters and paging devices.
       -migrate
                        Migrates earlier cluster version of backup file to current version.
                        New file will be created with _MIGRATED string appended to the given filename
       -nobackup
                        Stops auto backups.
                        When backup runs automatically, this number indicates
       -numfiles
                        the maximum amount of backup files that can be saved.
                        Oldest file is deleted for next cycle of backup.
       -recoverdb
                        Recovers from SSP database corruption, either from backup file or
                        from solidDB backup.
       -repopvs
                        Space separated list of physical volumes to be used as repository disks,
                        The given physical volume(s) cannot contain repository signature.
```

-restore	Takes backup file as input and brings the VIOS partition to the same state when the backup was taken.
-skipcluster	Restores all local devices, except cluster0.
-subfile	Node configuration file to be restored. This option needs to be used when the valid cluster repository exists on the disks. It cannot be used with '-repopvs' option. This option is ignored if the backup file is not a cluster backup.
-type	Only devices of given type are used for list or restore operation.
-validate	Validates the devices on the VIO Server against the devices listed in the backup file.
-view	Display the information of all virtual and logical devices from backup file.
-xmlvtds	Restores SSP mappings which are not in database, but are in backup xml file. This option is valid only when restoring a node using cluster backup file

Example 5-2 shows how to take backup of a Virtual I/O Server.

Example 5-2 Virtual I/O Server Config backup

```
$ viosbr -backup -file vios1_backup
Backup of this node (vios1) successful
$
```

Example 5-3 shows the method to check the contents of a viosbr backup.

Example 5-3 Virtual I/O Server (VIOS) Config details

```
$ viosbr -view -file vios1_backup.tar.gz
```

```
Details in: vios1_backup
```

Controllers:	
======	
Name	

iscsi0	
sissas0	U5802.001.0086848-P1-C1-T1
sissas1	U78A0.001.DNWHZWR-P1-T9
sissas2	U78A0.001.DNWHZWR-P1-C10-T1
ent10	U78A0.001.DNWHZWR-P1-C3-T3
ent11	U78A0.001.DNWHZWR-P1-C3-T4
ent12	U78A0.001.DNWHZWR-P1-C6-T1
pager0	U8233.E8B.061AA6P-V1-C16-L0-L0
ent13	U78A0.001.DNWHZWR-P1-C6-T2
pager1	U8233.E8B.061AA6P-V1-C17-L0-L0
ent14	U78A0.001.DNWHZWR-P1-C6-T3
vasi0	U8233.E8B.061AA6P-V1-C16
pager2	U8233.E8B.061AA6P-V1-C19-L0-L0
ent15	U78A0.001.DNWHZWR-P1-C6-T4
vasil	U8233.E8B.061AA6P-V1-C17
pager3	U8233.E8B.061AA6P-V1-C20-L0-L0

Phys Loc

pager4	U8233.E8B.061AA6P-V1-C7-L0-L0
usbhc0	U78A0.001.DNWHZWR-P1
vasi2	U8233.E8B.061AA6P-V1-C19
ent17	U8233.E8B.061AA6P-V1-C3-T1
usbhc1	U78A0.001.DNWHZWR-P1
vasi3	U8233.E8B.061AA6P-V1-C20
ent18	U8233.E8B.061AA6P-V1-C4-T1
vasi4	U8233.E8B.061AA6P-V1-C7
usbhc2	U78A0.001.DNWHZWR-P1
vbsd0	U8233.E8B.061AA6P-V1-C16-L0
ent19	U8233.E8B.061AA6P-V1-C5-T1
vbsd1	U8233.E8B.061AA6P-V1-C17-L0
vbsd2	U8233.E8B.061AA6P-V1-C19-L0
sata0	U5802.001.0086848-P1-C1-T1
vbsd3	U8233.E8B.061AA6P-V1-C20-L0
satal	U78A0.001.DNWHZWR-P1-T9
vbsd4	U8233.E8B.061AA6P-V1-C7-L0
1hea0	U78A0.001.DNWHZWR-P1
ibmvmc0	U8233.E8B.061AA6P-V1-C2
fcs0	U5802.001.0086848-P1-C2-T1
fcs1	U5802.001.0086848-P1-C2-T2
fcs2	U5802.001.0086848-P1-C3-T1
vts1	U8233.E8B.061AA6P-V1-C10
fcs3	U5802.001.0086848-P1-C3-T2
vts2	U8233.E8B.061AA6P-V1-C12
fcs4	U5802.001.0086848-P1-C4-T1
fcs5	U5802 001 0086848-P1-C4-T2
fcs6	U5802 001 0086848-P1-C5-T1
sfwcommO	U5802 001 0086848-P1-C2-T1-W0-L0
frs7	U5802 001 0086848-P1-C5-T2
sfwcomm1	U5802 001 0086848-P1-C2-T2-W0-L0
sfwcomm2	U5802 001 0086848-P1-C3-T1-W0-L0
sfwcomm3	U5802 001 0086848-P1-C3-T2-W0-L0
fscsil	U5802 001 0086848-P1-C2-T1
sfwcomm4	U5802 001 0086848-P1-C4-T1-W0-L0
entO	U78A0 001 DNWH7WR-P1-C4-T1
fscsil	U5802 001 0086848_P1_C2_T2
sfwcomm5	U5802 001 0086848_P1_C4_T2_W0_L0
ont1	17840 001 00000000 - 11 - 04 - 12 - 00 - 20
fscsi2	15802 001 00868/8 D1 - C3 T1
sfwcomm6	U5802 001 00868/8-P1-C5-T1-W0-L0
on+2	U7840 001 DNUH7WD D1 C5 T1
faceia	UF802 001 0086848 D1 C3 T2
rscsrs sfucomm7	
STWCUIIIII/	
facci	0/8A0.001.00000000000000000000000000000000
rscsr4	03802.001.0080848-P1-04-11
siwcollillo	JAJ 117040 001 DNUUZUD D1 02 T1
ent4	0/0A0.001.DNWHZWR-PI-CZ-TI
facci	
150515 cfwcomm0	03002.001.0000040-P1-04-12 SAS
STWCOIIIII9	
enuo facció	
15CS10	
entZZ	
ento	U/8AU.UUI.DNWHZWR-PI-C2-13

sas0 fscsi7	U5802.001.0086848-P1-C1-T1 U5802.001.0086848-P1-C5-T2
ent/ sfw0	U78A0.001.DNWHZWR-P1-C2-14
sas1	U78A0.001.DNWHZWR-P1-T9
ent8	U78A0.001.DNWHZWR-P1-C3-T1
ent9	U78A0.001.DNWHZWR-P1-C3-T2
fcnet0	U5802.001.0086848-P1-C2-T1
fcnet1	U5802.001.0086848-P1-C2-T2
fcnet2	U5802.001.0086848-P1-C3-T1
fcnet3	U5802.001.0086848-P1-C3-T2
fcnet4	U5802.001.0086848-P1-C4-T1
fcnet5	U5802.001.0086848-P1-C4-T2
fcnet6	U5802.001.0086848-P1-C5-T1
fcnet7	U5802.001.0086848-P1-C5-T2
Physical Volumes:	
Name	Phys Loc
hdisk0	U5802.001.0086848-P3-D2
hdisk1	U5802.001.0086848-P3-D3
hdisk2	U5802.001.0086848-P3-D4
hdisk3	U5802.001.0086848-P1-C1-T1-LFF0000-L0
hdisk4	U5802.001.0086848-P1-C1-T1-LFF0100-L0
hdisk5	U78A0.001.DNWH7WR-P2-D4
hdisk6	U78A0.001.DNWH7WR-P2-D5
hdisk7	U78A0 001 DNWH7WR-P2-D6
hdisk8	$\frac{1}{12840}  0.01  DNWH7WR_P2_D7$
hdiska	
hdisk10	UI5802 001 0086848_D1_C3_T1_W201600A0B820AC12_U10000000000
hdisk11	U5802.001.0086848-P1-C3-T1-W201000A0B229AC12-L100000000000000000000000000000000000
Optical Devices:	
cd0	U78A0.001.DNWHZWR-P2-D2
Tape Devices:	
rmt0	U78A0.001.DNWHZWR-P2-D1
Ethernet Interfaces	:
Name	=
en10	
en11	
en12	
en13	
en14	
en15	
en16	
en17	
en18	
en19	

Adapters:			
ent12	ent17		ent17
Physical Adapter	Default	Adapter	Virtual Adapters
Adapters:			
dapters:			
ory:			
rage Pools:			
hdisk5 hdisk6			
hdisk3 hdisk4			
hdisk1 hdisk2			
hdisk0			
PV Name			
	PV Name hdisk0 hdisk1 hdisk2 hdisk3 hdisk4 hdisk5 hdisk6 rage Pools: 	PV Name  hdisk0 hdisk1 hdisk2 hdisk3 hdisk4 hdisk5 hdisk6 rage Pools:  dapters:  Adapters:  Physical Adapter Default  ent12 ent17	PV Name 

Virtual Suspended Devices: Suspend Device Phys Loc

```
-----
             -----
suspended0
SVFC Adapters:
-----
Name
             FC Adapter Phys Loc
----
              -----
                             -----
vfchost1 fcs2
                             U8233.E8B.061AA6P-V1-C21
VBSD Pools:
=============
Name
----
poo10
VRM(AMS) Pages:
_____
      StreamID
Name
             -----
----
vrmpage0 0x100017d536f5c
RSCT:
_____
ct_node_id
_____
471df119a2752e29
Cluster:
_____
Cluster
             State
-----
             ----
Virtual Log Repositories:
-----
Virtual Log Repository State
----- -----
vlogrepo0
            AVAILABLE
$
```

**viosbr backups:** By default, **viosbr** backups are stored in /home/padmin/cfgbackups. You can use a different location if you want. You can even specify Network File Systems (NFSs) as a path.

#### 5.1.5 IVM updates

IBM periodically provides updates (or fix packs) for the Virtual I/O Server (VIOS). These fix packs can be downloaded from the Virtual I/O Server support web page:

http://www14.software.ibm.com/support/customercare/sas/f/vios/home.html

Updates are necessary whenever new functions or fixes are introduced.

**Fix packs can cause IVM to restart:** Applying a fix pack can cause the restart of the IVM. That means that all LPARs must be stopped during this reboot.

## Determining the current Virtual I/O Server level

By running the **ioslevel** command from the Virtual I/O Server command line, the padmin user can determine the actual installed level of the Virtual I/O Server software (Example 5-4).

Example 5-4 Using the ioslevel command

\$ ioslevel
2.2.1.4

In the example, the level of the Virtual I/O Server software is 2.2.1.4.

You can refer to the Fix Central website (http://www.ibm.com/support/fixcentral) to confirm the latest available version of the Virtual I/O Server software level. You must select some options in the website to check for the latest fix level that is available.

In the Fix Central website, select Virtualization software in the Product Group drop-down menu. Then, select PowerVM Virtual I/O Server in the Select from Virtualization software drop-down menu. In the Installed Version drop-down menu, select your Virtual I/O Server version. Click Continue. Figure 5-6 shows an example.



Figure 5-6 Fix Central website
The **Select fixes** page opens, and shows the latest available fixes (fix packs, service packs, and interim fixes) that are available for the selected version. Figure 5-7 shows an example.

	Select f	ixes				
- Return to IBM Support Portal	t	oftware, PowerVM V	/irtual I/O Server	(2.2.1.4, AI	l platforms)	
Fix Central	Download opti	ons				
Inventory upload	> • Download metho	d: HTTP				Change download option
Supported products	> Include requisite	s: Yes				
Enhancements	> Select fixes					
Heln	> The following resu	Its match your request	Select the fixes you	want to dow	nload	-> Choro this download list
Foodbook			,			
reeuback	Continue	Clear self	ections		Show	fix details   Hide fix details
		_				
Ch						
Product selector	1-2 of 2 results					
PowerVM Virtual VO Server	r					
nstalled Version	1. Interim fix:	VIOS 2.2.1.4 IV20593	3s01.120511 ⇒			Jun 8, 2012
2.2.1.4	VIOS_2.2.1	4_IV20593s01.120511				
Submit	Linux Clic	ent partitions are using v	virtualized USB tape	devices [Fea	ture Codes EU16 and	5673] 2) VIOS
	USB tap	e device is exported as a	a virtual device from	a VIOS to eit	her an IBMi or Linux o	lient partition. AIX
	partitions	are not affected. This in	ntermittent problem	an cause ind	correct data on the tap	e device, either
	but incor	ect data is returned to t	the client partition).	or the read	path (the data is cone	ct on the tape,
Filter your content	Readme					
Component	2 Interim fix:	VIOS 2 2 1 4 IC8300/	1 179//23 Eiv =			May 24, 201
5765G3400 (2)	2. Interim fix: VIOS 2.2.1	VIOS_2.2.1.4_IC83004	4 <u>_IZ94423_Fix</u> → x			May 24, 2012
Component     5765G3400 (2)     And Platform     VIOS (2)	2. Interim fix: VIOS_2.2.1	VIOS_2.2.1.4_IC83004 4_IC83004_IZ94423_Fiz	4 <u>IZ94423_Fix</u> → x			May 24, 2012
Component     5765G3400 (2)     And Platform     VIOS (2)     And Fix type	☐ 2. Interim fix: VIOS_2.2.1	VIOS_2.2.1.4_IC83004 4_IC83004_IZ94423_Fit	4 <u>_IZ94423_Fix</u> → x			May 24, 2012
Component           5765G3400 (2)           And Platform           VIOS (2)           And Fix type           Interim fix (2)	2. Interim fix: VIOS_2.2.1 ■ Readme	<u>VIOS 2.2.1.4 IC83004</u> .4_IC83004_IZ94423_Fi;	<u>4_IZ94423_Fix</u> ⇒ x			May 24, 2012
Component           5765G3400 (2)           And Platform           VIOS (2)           And Fix type           Interim fix (2)           And Applies to	2. Interim fix: VIOS_2.2.1     Readme     1-2 of 2 results	<u>VIOS_2.2.1.4_IC83004</u> 4_IC83004_IZ94423_Fiz	4 <u>1794423_Fix</u> ≠ ×			May 24, 2012
Component           5765G3400 (2)           And Platform           VIOS (2)           And Fix type           Interim fix (2)           And Applies to           2.2.1.4 (2)	☐ 2. Interim fix:	<u>VIOS_2.2.1.4_IC83004</u> 4_IC83004_IZ94423_Fi;	4 <u>_1Z94423_Fix</u> → x			May 24, 2012
Component           5765G3400 (2)           And Platform           VIOS (2)           And Fix type           Interim fix (2)           And Applies to           2.2.1.4 (2)	2. Interim fix: VIOS_2.2.1     Feadme     1.2 of 2 results     Continue	VIOS_2.2.1.4_IC83004 4_IC83004_IZ94423_Fit	4_IZ94423_Fix → ×	Back	Show	May 24, 2012
Component           5765G3400 (2)           And Platform           VIOS (2)           And Fix type           Interim fix (2)           And Applies to           2.2.1.4 (2)	2. Interim fix: VIOS_2.2.1  Readme  1-2 of 2 results  Continue	VIOS 2.2.1.4 IC83004 4_IC83004_IZ94423_Fit	4_IZ94423_Fix → ×	Back	Show	May 24, 2012
Component           5765G3400 (2)           And Platform           VIOS (2)           And Fix type           Interim fix (2)           And Applies to           2.2.1.4 (2)	2. Interim fix: VIOS_2.2.1  Readme  1.2 of 2 results  Continue	VIOS_2.2.1.4_IC83004 4_IC83004_IZ94423_Fit	4_IZ94423_Fix → ×	Back	Show	May 24, 2012
Component           5765G3400 (2)           And Platform           VIOS (2)           And Fix type           Interim fix (2)           And Applies to           2.2.1.4 (2)	2. Interim fix: VIOS_2.2.1  Readme  1.2 of 2 results  Continue	VIOS_2.2.1.4_IC83004 4_IC83004_IZ94423_Fit	t <u>I794423_Fix</u> → x ections	Back	Show	May 24, 2012
Component           5765G3400 (2)           And Platform           VIOS (2)           And Fix type           Interim fix (2)           And Applies to           2.2.1.4 (2)	2. Interim fix: VIOS_2.2.1 Readme 1.2 of 2 results Continue	VIOS_2.2.1.4_IC83004 4_IC83004_IZ94423_Fit	t <u>I794423_Fix</u> → x	Back	Show	May 24, 2012
component           5765G3400 (2)           And Platform           VIOS (2)           And Fix type           Interim fix (2)           And Applies to           2.2.1.4 (2)		VIOS_2.2.1.4_IC83004 4_IC83004_IZ94423_Fi: Clear sele Information for = C-suite executives	4_IZ94423_Fix ↔ x ections Shop & buy = Special offe	Back	Show About IBM = Latest news	May 24, 2012 fix details   Hide fix details Popular links = Careers
Component 5765G3400 (2) And Platform VIOS (2) And Fix type Interim fix (2) And Applies to 2.2.1.4 (2) Create a profile Communities		VIOS_2.2.1.4_IC83004 4_IC83004_IZ94423_Fit Clear sets Information for = C-suite executives = Industries	4_IZ94423_Fix ↔ x ections Shop & buy = Special offe = Personal co	Back s nputers	About IBM ■ Latest news ■ IBM's Centennial	May 24, 2012 fix details   Hide fix details fix details   Experimentation fix details   Hide fix details fix details   Hide fix details
Component 5765G3400 (2) And Platform VIOS (2) And Fix type Interim fix (2) And Applies to 2.2.1.4 (2) Communities Communities Events		VIOS_2.2.1.4_IC83004 4_IC83004_IZ94423_Fit Clear sele Clear sele Information for = C-suite executives = Industries = Small and medium	t I794423 Fix → x ections Shop & buy = Special offe = Personal cc = Ready to bu	Back 's nputers /?	Show About IBM = Latest news = IBM's Centennial = IBM Research	May 24, 2012 fix details   Hide fix details Popular links = Careers = Fix central = Passport Advantage
Component Component 5765G3400 (2) And Platform VIOS (2) And Fix type Interim fix (2) And Applies to 2.2.1.4 (2) Create a profile Communities Events Academic collaboration		VIOS_2.2.1.4_IC83004 4_IC83004_IZ94423_Fi: Clear sele Clear sele Information for = C-suite executives = Industries = Small and medium business = Developers	t I794423 Fix → x ections Shop & buy = Special offe = Personal cc = Ready to bu = Financing	Back 's nputers /?	Show About IBM = Latest news = IBM's Centennial = IBM Research = Corporate responsite	May 24, 2012 fix details   Hide fix details fix details   Hide fix details Popular links = Careers = Fix central = Passport Advantage = Product security bulletin
Component Component 5765G3400 (2) And Platform VIOS (2) And Fix type Interim fix (2) And Applies to 2.2.1.4 (2) Communities Events Academic collaboration Research collaboration		VIOS_2.2.1.4_IC83004 4_IC83004_IZ94423_Fi: Clear sele Clear sele Clear sele C-suite executives Industries Small and medium business Developers IBM Business Partner	t I794423 Fix → x ections Shop & buy Special offe Personal cc Ready to bu Financing Find a sales T = Find	Back s nputers /? rep ess Batter	Show About IBM = Latest news = IBM's Centennial = IBM Research = Corporate responsit = Employee directory = More about IBM	May 24, 2012 fix details   Hide fix details fix details   Hide fix details
Component Component Somorell S		VIOS_2.2.1.4_IC83004 4_IC83004_IZ94423_Fi: Clear sele Clear sele Clear sele C-suite executives Industries Small and medium business Developers IBM Business Partner IBM Business Partner	A I794423 Fix → x ections Shop & buy Special offe Personal cc Ready to bu Financing Final a safes S = Find a Busin BHM loco me	Back Back nputers ?? rep ess Partner chandise	About IBM = Latest news = IBM's Centennial = IBM Research = Corporate responsit = Employee directory = More about IBM	May 24, 2012 fix details   Hide fix details fix details   Hide fix details = Careers = Fix central = Passport Advantage = Product security bulletin = Software = System x = System x

Figure 5-7 Fixes list from the Fix Central website

All Virtual I/O Server fix packs are cumulative and contain all fixes from previous fix packs. For service packs, you must have previously installed the related fix pack.

We suggest that you keep your server always updated with the latest available system firmware. See 2.3, "Microcode update" on page 23 for more information about microcode updates.

It is also a good practice to look for your server in the Fix Level Recommendation Tool website: http://www14.software.ibm.com/webapp/set2/flrt/home

**Important:** Ensure that you have the correct level of firmware before you update the IVM.

All interim fixes that are applied to the Virtual I/O Server must be manually removed before applying a fix pack or service pack. Virtual I/O Server clients who applied interim fixes to the Virtual I/O Server can use the following procedure to remove them before applying fix or service packs. Example 5-5 shows how to list fixes from the VIOS command line.

Example 5-5 Listing fixes

```
$ oem_setup_env
# emgr -P /*gives a list of the installed efix's (by label)
There is no efix data on this system.
# exit
$
```

**Message for no fixes installed:** Because there are no fix packs installed in our server, the output from the **emgr** - P command shows this message, which is shown in Example 5-5.

#### Downloading the fix packs

You can download the fix packs by using four different options:

- Download Director
- ► FTP
- ► HTTP
- ISO image

It is possible to choose the download options in the Fix Central website. After selecting the fixes that you want to download in the Select fixes page, a list of options is displayed, similar to what is shown in Figure 5-8. **Select your preferred download option**.

	stries & solutions	Services	Products	Support	My IBM	Bearch Q	
	Downlo	ad opti	ons	Server (2.2.1.	( All platforms)		
← Return to IBM Support	Virtualization	ontware, rower	vivi virtuar i/c	5 Server (2.2.1.	4, All platforms)		
Fortal	Select downlo	ad options					E
	Select the downlo	ad method to be u	used to download	d fixes.			
Inventory upload Supported products	Download usir     (requires Java	ng Download Direc enabled browser)	tor 🗳	• What is this?			
Enhancements		a bulk ETD		What is this?			
Help	> Download usin						5
Feedback	) Oownload usir	ng your browser (H	ITTP)				
	Download files as	an iso image					
	Download file	s as an iso image					
	important fix infor Central to provide	mation. Click <u>here</u> quisites and co-red	for an explanati quisite fixes (you	on of what prerequ	isites you can expect F es you need later)	īx	
	Continue		Back				
Connect with us	Key topics	Information fo	r Si	hop & buy	About IBM	Popular links	
	Analytics				IBM's Centennial		
■ Events	Cloud computing	Small and med business	lium 🛛	Ready to buy?	IBM Research	■ Passport Advantage	
Academic collaboration	Security and resilience	Developers				nsibility  Product security bulletins	
Research collaboration	Smarter commerce	<ul> <li>Developers</li> <li>IBM Business</li> </ul>	■ Partoers	Find a sales rep	Employee direct	ory Software	
IBMers past and present	Smarter Computing	<ul> <li>Investors</li> </ul>		FING & Business Partn	er ■ More about IBM	■ System x	
	<ul> <li>Sustainability</li> <li>Specter Cities</li> </ul>	Job seekers		ibiw logo merchandise		Vatson	

Figure 5-8 Fix Central download options

For the first three download options, all file sets are downloaded into a user-specified directory. When the download completes, the updates can be applied from a directory on your local hard disk. Follow these steps to install the fix pack:

- 1. Log in to the Virtual I/O Server as the user padmin.
- 2. Create a directory on the Virtual I/O Server.

\$ mkdir directory\_name

- 3. Using the ftp command, transfer the update files to the directory that you created.
- 4. Apply the update by running the updateios command:

\$ updateios -dev directory\_name -install -accept

Accept to continue the installation after the preview update is run.

5. Reboot

Verify a successful update by checking the results of the **updateios** command and running the **ioslevel** command. The result of the **ioslevel** command should equal the level of the downloaded package.

#### Applying updates from a remotely mounted file system

If the remote file system is to be mounted as *read-only*, you must first rename the fix pack file tableofcontents.txt to .toc; otherwise, you are prevented from installing this fix pack. Use the following steps to apply updates from a remotely mounted file system:

- 1. Log in to the Virtual I/O Server as user padmin.
- 2. Mount the remote directory onto the Virtual I/O Server:
  - \$ mount remote\_machine\_name:directory /mnt
- 3. Apply the update by running the updateios command:

\$ updateios -dev /mnt -install -accept

4. If prompted to remove the .toc?, enter no.

Verify a successful update by checking the results of the **updateios** command and running the **ioslevel** command. The result of the **ioslevel** command should equal the level of the downloaded package.

#### Applying updates from the ROM drive

This fix pack can be burned onto a CD by using ISO image files. After the CD is created, do the following steps to apply the update:

- 1. Log in to the Virtual I/O Server as user padmin.
- 2. Place the update CD into the drive.
- Apply the update by running the updateios command:

```
$ updateios -dev /dev/cdX -install -accept
```

(where X is a device number between 0 and N)

4. Verify a successful update by checking the results of the **updateios** command and running the **ioslevel** command. The result of **ioslevel** command should equal the level of the downloaded package.

**Updating from an ioslevel before 1.3.0.0:** If you update from an ioslevel before 1.3.0.0, the **updateios** command might indicate several failures (such as missing requisites) while you install the fix pack. This notice is expected. Proceed with the update if you are prompted to Continue with the installation [y/n].

## 5.1.6 The migration between HMC and IVM

It is important to note that moving between the Hardware Management Console (HMC) and an Integrated Virtualization Manager (IVM) environment requires a certain amount of reconfiguration. **Virtual I/O Server installation:** There is no guarantee onto which disk the Virtual I/O Server will install. If the installation takes place on a disk that contains your client volume group, you lose the data and are not able to import it again.

Have a backup of the Virtual I/O Server and virtual I/O clients, as well as profiles for system recovery, before you attempt any migration.

A simple method might be the physical removal of any disks that you want to save, while you do the installation. Then, put the disks back in after installation.

Always make a backup of your environment before you migrate between the HMC and IVM environment.

## 5.1.7 Recovery after an improper HMC connection

An HMC must not be connected to a system that is running the IVM; otherwise, you cannot do any other operation on the IVM.

If an HMC was connected to a system using the IVM, the following steps explain how to re-enable the IVM capabilities:

- 1. Power off the system.
- 2. Remove the system definition from the HMC.
- 3. Unplug the HMC network cable from the system if directly connected.
- Connect a TTY console emulator with a serial cross-over cable to one of the system's serial ports.
- 5. Press any key on the console to open the service processor prompt.
- Log in as the user admin and answer the questions about the number of lines and columns.
- 7. Reset the service processor.

Type 2 to select **2. System Service Aids**, type 10 to select **10. Reset Service Processor**, and then type 1 to confirm your selection. Wait for the system to reboot.

8. Reset it to the factory configuration (Manufacturing Default Configuration).

Type 2 to select **2. System Service Aids**, type 11 to select **11. Factory Configuration**, then type 1 to select **1. Reset all settings**, and then type 1 to confirm. Wait for the system to reboot.

9. Configure the ASMI IP addresses if needed.

Type 5 to select **5. Network Services**, type 1 to select **1. Network Configuration**, select the wanted IP version (type 1 to select **1. IPv4**, or 2 to select **2. IPV6**), and then configure each Ethernet adapter. For more information, refer to 2.4, "Advanced System Management Interface IP address setup" on page 26.

10.Start the system.

Type 1 to select **1.** Power/Restart Control, type 1 to select **1.** Power On/Off System, type 6 to select **6.** Power on, and press Enter to confirm your selection.

- 11.Go to the system management services (SMS) menu.
- 12.Update the boot list.

Type 5 to select **5. Select Boot Options**, type 2 to select **2. Configure Boot Device Order**, and select the IVM boot disk.

- 13.Boot the system.
- 14. Wait for the IVM to start.
- 15.Connect to the IVM with the GUI.
- 16. Restore the partition configuration using the last backup file.

From the Service Management menu in the navigation area, click **Backup/Restore**, and then click **Restore Partition Configuration** in the work area. For more information, refer to 5.1.1, "Backup and restore of the logical partition definitions" on page 152.

This operation updates only the IVM partition configuration and does not restore the LPARs hosted by the IVM.

- 17. Reboot the IVM. (If changes do not require a reboot, then recovery of the IVM should be done immediately.)
- 18. Restore the partition configuration using the last backup file.

This time, each LPAR definition is restored.

19. Reboot the IVM.

This reboot is needed to make each virtual device available to the LPARs. (This is also possible by issuing the **cfgdev** command.)

20. Restart each LPAR.

## 5.1.8 Migration considerations

The following list contains the minimum considerations to migrate between an HMC and the IVM. For a production redeployment, it depends on the configuration of the system:

- Virtual I/O Server version
- System firmware level
- Virtual I/O Server I/O device configuration
- Backup Virtual I/O Server, virtual I/O clients profile, and virtual I/O devices
- The mapping information between physical and virtual I/O devices
- Virtual I/O Server and VIO client backups

#### Virtual I/O Server version

The **ioslevel** command displays the Virtual I/O Server version. You see output that is similar to the following display:

\$ ioslevel
2.2.1.4

#### System firmware level

You can display the system firmware level by using the **1sfware** command. You see output that is similar to the following display:

```
$ lsfware
system:AL730_087 (t) AL730_087 (p) AL730_087 (t)
```

# Virtual I/O Server I/O device configuration

To display I/O devices such as an adapter, disk, or slots, use the **1sdev** command. See Example 5-6 for an example.

Example 5-6 Virtual I/O Server device information

<pre>\$ lsdev -type add</pre>	apter	
name	status	description
ent0	Available	2-Port 10/100/1000 Base-TX PCI-X Adapter (14108902)
ent1	Available	2-Port 10/100/1000 Base-TX PCI-X Adapter (14108902)
ent2	Available	2-Port 10/100/1000 Base-TX PCI-X Adapter (14108902)
ent3	Available	2-Port 10/100/1000 Base-TX PCI-X Adapter (14108902)
ent4	Available 4	-Port 10/100/1000 Base-TX PCI-Express Adapter
(14106803)		
ent5	Available	4-Port 10/100/1000 Base-TX PCI-Express Adapter
(14106803)		
ent6	Available	4-Port 10/100/1000 Base-TX PCI-Express Adapter
(14106803)		
ent7	Available	4-Port 10/100/1000 Base-TX PCI-Express Adapter
(14106803)		
ent8	Available	4-Port 10/100/1000 Base-TX PCI-Express Adapter
(14106803)		
ent9	Available	4-Port 10/100/1000 Base-TX PCI-Express Adapter
(14106803)		
ent10	Available	4-Port 10/100/1000 Base-TX PCI-Express Adapter
(14106803)		······································
ent11	Available	4-Port 10/100/1000 Base-TX PCI-Express Adapter
(14106803)		
ent.12	Available	logical Host Ethernet Port (lp-hea)
ent13	Available	Logical Host Ethernet Port (lp-hea)
ent15	Available	Logical Host Ethernet Port (lp-hea)
ent16	Available	10 Gigabit Ethernet Adapter (ct3)
ent17	Available	Virtual I/O Ethernet Adapter (1-lan)
ent18	Available	Virtual I/O Ethernet Adapter (1-lan)
ent19	Available	Virtual I/O Ethernet Adapter (1-lan)
ent20	Available	Virtual I/O Ethernet Adapter (1-lan)
ent21	Available	Shared Ethernet Adapter
ent21	Available	Virtual I/O Ethernet Adapter (1-lan)
fcs0	Available	866 DCI Evoness Dual Dort EC Adapter
(df1000f114108a0)	3)	oub fer Express buar fort fe Adapter
fcs1	Jy Availahlo	866 DCI Evoness Dual Dort EC Adapter
(df1000f11/108a0)	3)	oub fer Express buar fort fe Adapter
(u110001114100a0.	Jy Availablo	ACH DCI Express Dual Dort EC Adaptor
(df1000f11/100a0)	2)	oub fer Express buar fort fe Adapter
(u110001114100a0.	Availabla	906 DCI Evenness Dual Dent EC Adapter
(df1000f11/100-0)	Avallable	oub PCI Express Dual Port PC Adapter
(u110001114100d0.	Jyzilahla	906 DCI Evenness Dual Dent EC Adapton
(df1000f11/100-0)	AVAIIADIE	OGD PCI EXPress Dual Port PC Adapter
(u)10001114100d0.	o) Availabla	906 DOI Evenness Dual Deat EC Adapter
(df1000f11/100-0	AVAIIADIE	OGD PCI EXPress Dual Port PC Adapter
(u)10001114100d0.	Juailahla	Ach DCI Evenness Dus] Dent EC Adapter
ICS0	AVAIIADIE	BGD PCI Express Dual Port FC Adapter
(u110001114108a0.	) Avai1-61-	Ach DCI Evenence Dual Deat EC Adapted
ICS/	AVAIIADIE	oud PLI Express Dual Port FL Adapter
(at1000t114108a0.	5) August 1 - 1 - 1 -	10 Circlit Ethomat CD DCI European Hack Day All
	AVAIIADIE	IU GIGADIT ETNERNET-SK PLI-EXPRESS HOST BUS Adapter
(2514300014108c0)	3)	

ibmvmc0	Available	Virtual M	anagement	t Char	nel		
lhea0	Available	Logical H	ost Ether	rnet A	dapter (1-hea)	)	
pager0	Available	Pager Ker	nel Exter	nsion			
pager1	Available	Pager Ker	nel Exter	nsion			
pager2	Available	Pager Ker	nel Exter	nsion			
pager3	Available	Pager Ker	nel Exter	nsion			
pager4	Available	Pager Ker	nel Exter	nsion			
sissas0	Available	PCI Expres	ss x8 Ext	t Dual	-x4 3Gb SAS Ad	dapter	
sissas1	Available	PCI-X266	Planar 30	Gb SAS	S RAID Adapter		
sissas2	Available	PCI Expres	ss x1 Aux	kilian	ry Cache Adapte	er	
usbhc0	Available	USB Host	Controlle	er (33	3103500)		
usbhc1	Available	USB Host	Controlle	er (33	3103500)		
usbhc2	Available	USB Enhan	ced Host	Contr	roller (3310e00	00)	
vasi0	Available	Virtual A	synchrond	ous Se	ervices Interfa	ace (VA	ASI)
vasi1	Available	Virtual A	synchrond	ous Se	ervices Interfa	ace (VA	ASI)
vasi2	Available	Virtual A	synchrond	ous Se	ervices Interfa	ace (VA	ASI)
vasi3	Available	Virtual A	synchrond	ous Se	ervices Interfa	ace (VA	ASI)
vasi4	Available	Virtual A	synchrond	ous Se	ervices Interfa	ace (V/	ASI)
vbsd0	Available	Virtual B	lock Stor	rage [	Device (VBSD)		
vbsd1	Available	Virtual B	lock Stor	rage [	Device (VBSD)		
vbsd2	Available	Virtual B	lock Stor	rage [	Device (VBSD)		
vbsd3	Available	Virtual B	lock Stor	rage [	Device (VBSD)		
vbsd4	Available	Virtual B	lock Stor	rage [	Device (VBSD)		
vfchost0	Available	Virtual F	C Server	Adapt	er		
vfchost1	Available	Virtual F	C Server	Adapt	er		
vhost0	Available	Virtual S	CSI Serve	er Ada	apter		
vhost1	Available	Virtual S	CSI Serve	er Ada	apter		
vhost2	Available	Virtual S	CSI Serve	er Ada	apter		
vsa0	Available	LPAR Virt	ual Seria	al Ada	apter		
vsal	Available	LPAR Virt	ual Seria	al Ada	apter		
vts0	Available	Virtual T	TY Serven	r Adap	oter		
vts1	Available	Virtual T	TY Serven	r Adap	oter		
vts2	Available	Virtual T	TY Serven	r Adap	oter		
\$ lsvg -lv datapo	pol1						
datapool1:							
LV NAME	TYPE	LPs	PPs	PVs	LV STATE	MOUNT	POINT
lpar3rootvg	jfs	1024	1024	1	closed/syncd	N/A	

If you want to display the attribute of each device, use the **lsdev** -dev **Devicename** -attr command. And you can use the **lsdev** -slots command for the slot information and **lsdev** -dev **Devicename** -child command for the child devices that are associated with these devices.

Also, you can use the **lsvg** -lv volumegroup\_name command to discover system disk configuration and volume group information.

**Tip:** Note the physical location code of the disk unit that you are using to boot the Virtual I/O Server. To display this code, use the **1s1dev** -dev Devicename -vpd command.

To migrate from an HMC to an IVM environment, the Virtual I/O Server must own all of the physical devices. If the server does not, all of the physical devices are assigned to the Virtual I/O Server when it is managed by the IVM.

## Backup of Virtual I/O Server and client profiles

Document the information in the virtual I/O clients which have a dependency on the virtual SCSI server and the virtual SCSI client adapter, as shown in Figure 5-9.

neral Har	dware Virtual Adapters Settin	ngs Other			
ctions <b>T</b>					
tual recour	ces allow for the sharing of phys	ical bardware betw	een logical partitions. The curre	ant virtual adapter settings are lis	ted below
		ical fial dwale betw			ited below.
ximum virti	ual adapters :		* 200		
mber of vir	tual adapters :		17		
	🐨 🐨 🖉 🖉 💶 Sele	ect Action 🚩			
lect	Type ^ A	dapter ID	^ Server/Client P ^ Partne	r Adapter 🔷 Required	^
	.,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,				
	Ethernet	22	N/A	N/A	No
	Ethernet	3	N/A	N/A	No
	Ethernet	4	N/A	N/A	No
	Ethernet	5	N/A	N/A	No
	Ethernet	<u>6</u>	N/A	N/A	No
	Server Fibre Channel	21	lpar2_server1(3)	5	No
	Server SCSI	<u>11</u>	lpar2_server1(3)	2	No
	Server SCSI	<u>13</u>	lpar3_server1(4)	2	No
	Client Serial	<u>10</u>	lpar2_server1(3)	0	No
	Client Serial	<u>12</u>	lpar3_server1(4)	0	No
	Server Serial	<u>0</u>	Any Partition	Any Partition Slot	Yes
	Server Serial	1	Any Partition	Any Partition Slot	Yes
	VASI	<u>16</u>	N/A	N/A	N/A
	VASI	<u>17</u>	N/A	N/A	N/A
	VASI	<u>19</u>	N/A	N/A	N/A
	VASI	20	N/A	N/A	N/A
	VASI	Z	N/A	N/A	N/A

Figure 5-9 Virtual SCSI: Client adapter properties

## The mapping information between physical and virtual I/O devices

To display the mapping information between the physical I/O devices and virtual I/O devices such as disk, network, and optical media, use the **1smap** -vadapter vhost# command. Refer to Example 5-7 for an example.

Example 5-7 Mapping information between physical I/O devices and virtual I/O devices

\$ lsmap -all SVSA	Physloc	Client Partition ID
vhost1	U9409.M50.1059C72-V1-C11	0x0000003
VTD Status LUN Backing device Physloc Mirrored	vtscsiO Available Ox820000000000000 hdisk1 U78AO.001.DNWGPLO-P2-D4 false	
SVSA	Physloc	Client Partition ID
vhost2	U9409.M50.1059C72-V1-C13	0x00000004
VTD	vtscsil	

 Status
 Available

 LUN
 0x8300000000000

 Backing device
 hdisk4

 Physloc
 U78A0.001.DNWGPL0-P1-C3-T1-W201600A0B829AC12-L20000000000

 Mirrored
 false

#### Virtual I/O Server and VIO client backups

Before the migration from an HMC to an IVM environment, it is necessary to back up the Virtual I/O Server and virtual I/O client. For more information about backup, refer to 5.1.2, "Backup and restore of the IVM operating system" on page 155.

# 5.1.9 Migration from an HMC to an IVM environment

For redeployment from HMC to IVM, the managed system must be reset to the Manufacturing Default Configuration by using the ASMI menu function.

**Tip:** The suggested method is a *complete reinstallation*. The only reason to save the virtual I/O installation is if there is client data on the rootvg (not recommended; use different storage pools for client data). If the client data is on other VGs (volume groups), export the VG and remove the disk to ensure that it does not get installed over. You need to reconfigure all of your device mappings, and so on. The outcome is that this type of installation is more complex and time-consuming than starting with a "fresh" installation.

This migration has the following requirements:

- ► Virtual I/O Server of the HMC-managed environment owns all the physical I/O devices
- Backup of a Virtual I/O Server and a virtual I/O client
- Virtual I/O Server with version 1.2, or above
- System firmware level with SF230\_120, or above

Figure 5-10 shows the general migration procedure from an HMC to an IVM environment. There is some dependency on system configuration.



Figure 5-10 General migration procedure from an HMC to an IVM environment

The following steps, as shown in Figure 5-10, describe the general migration procedure from an HMC to an IVM environment:

1. Reset to the Manufacturing Default Configuration

If you decide to do this migration, it is necessary to restore the firmware setting, network configuration, and passwords to their factory defaults. When you reset the firmware, it removes all partition configuration and any personalization that was made to the service processor. A default full system partition is created to handle all the hardware resources. Without an HMC, the system console is provided through the internal serial ports. Connections are made using a serial ASCII console and cross-over cable that is connected to the serial port.

If you perform the firmware reset after detaching the HMC, the HMC retains information about the server as a managed system. You can remove this by using the HMC GUI.

When a console session is opened to the reset server, at the first menu, select **1.Power/Restart Control**  $\rightarrow$  **1.Power On/Off system**, as shown in Example 5-8.

Example 5-8 Power On/Off System

Power On/Off System
Current system power state: Off
Current firmware boot side: Temporary
Current system server firmware state: Not running
<ol> <li>System diagnostic level for the next boot Currently: Normal</li> </ol>
<ol> <li>Firmware boot side for the next boot Currently: Temporary</li> </ol>
3. System operating mode

```
Currently: Normal

4. Server firmware start policy

Currently: Running (Auto-Start Always)

5. System power off policy

Currently: Automatic

6. Power on

7. Default Partition Environment

Currently: AIX

98. Return to previous menu

99. Log out
```

#### S1>

Example 5-8 on page 175 shows that the *Power on* menu is 6. This means that the firmware reset is not done and the system is still managed by an HMC. If the firmware reset is done and the system is no longer managed by an HMC, then the *Power on* menu is 8. You can reset the service processor or put the server back to factory configuration through the System Service Aids menu in ASMI.

2. Change the serial connection for IVM

When you change the management system from HMC to IVM, you can no longer use the default console connection through vty0. You change the console connection, as shown in Example 5-9. This change is effective after the Virtual I/O Server reboot, and you will change the physical serial connection from SPC1 to SPC2 for using the vty1 console connection.

Example 5-9 Serial connection change for IVM

```
# lscons
NULL
# lsdev -Cc tty
vty0 Avilable Asynchronous Terminal
# lsdev -Cl vty0 -F parent
vsa0
# lsdev -Cl vsa0
vsa0 Available LPAR Virtual Serial Adapter
# chcons /dev/vty0
chcons: console assigned to: /dev/vty0, effective on next system boot
```

3. Connect the IVM web-interface by using the Virtual I/O Server IP address

The first web-interface pane that opens after the login process is View/Modify Partitions, as shown in Figure 5-11. You can see only a Virtual I/O Server partition. IVM does not have any information about other virtual I/O clients because the service process is reset to the *Manufacturing Default Configuration*.

Integrated Virtualization Manager				2 1990	IEM.
Welcome padmin : vios1				Edit my profile	Help   Log out
Partition Management	View/Modify Partitions				?
<u>View/Modify Partitions</u> <u>View/Modify System Properties</u> <u>View/Modify Shared Memory Pool</u>	To perform an action on a partition, f System Overview	irst select the partition or	r partitions, and then select the	e task.	
I/O Adapter Management	Total system memory:	128 GB	Total processing units:	16	
<u>View/Modify Host Ethernet Adapters</u> <u>View/Modify Virtual Ethernet</u> <u>View/Modify Physical Adapters</u> <u>View Virtual Fibre Channel</u>	Memory available: Reserved firmware memory: System attention LED:	110.75 GB 1.25 GB Inactive	Processing units available: Processor pool utilization:	14.4 0.29	(1.8%)
Virtual Storage Management	Partition Details				
<u>View/Modify Virtual Storage</u>	🕞 🕞 😽 🛛 🛠 Create Partiti	on Activate Shutdow	wn More Tasks	~	
IVM Management	Select ID ^ Name State	Uptime Memory Pro	ocessors <u>Entitled</u>	Utilized	Reference
View/Modify User Accounts     View/Modify TCP/IP Settings     Guided Setup     Enter Power/M Edition Key	1 <u>06-</u> <u>1AA6P</u> Running	11.2 Minutes 16 GB 16	Processing Units	Processing Units 0.28	<u>Code</u>
Service Management					
Electronic Service Agent     Service Focal Point     Manage Serviceable Events     Service Utilities     Create Serviceable Event     Manage Dumps     Collect VPD Information     Updates     Backup/Restore     Application Logs     Monitor Tasks     Hardware Inventory	Virtual IO Server				

Figure 5-11 View/Modify Partitions

4. Re-create virtual devices and Ethernet bridging

When changed to an IVM environment, the Virtual I/O Server (now *Management Partition*) still has virtual device information left over from the HMC environment. There is the virtual SCSI, virtual Ethernet, shared Ethernet, and virtual target device information, but their status is changed to *defined* after migrating to an IVM environment.

Because these virtual devices no longer exist, remove them before creating the virtual I/O clients in IVM. You can remove the virtual devices, as shown in Example 5-10.

If you define virtual disks for clients from the Management Partition, the virtual SCSI server and client devices are created automatically for you.

Example 5-10 Remove the virtual device

```
$ rmdev -dev vhost1 -recursive
vtscsi0 deleted
vhost1 deleted
$ rmdev -dev vhost2 -recursive
vtscsi1 deleted
vhost2 deleted
$ rmdev -dev vfchost1 -recursive
vfchost1 deleted
$ rmdev -dev vfchost1 -recursive
vfchost1 deleted
$ rmdev -dev ent16
ent16 deleted
```

\$ rmdev -dev en16 en16 deleted \$ rmdev -dev et16 et16 deleted \$ rmdev -dev ent17 ent17 deleted \$ rmdev -dev en17 en17 deleted \$ rmdev -dev et17 et17 deleted \$ rmdev -dev ent18 ent18 deleted \$ rmdev -dev en18 en18 deleted \$ rmdev -dev et18 et18 deleted \$ rmdev -dev ent19 ent19 deleted \$ rmdev -dev en19 en19 deleted \$ rmdev -dev et19 et19 deleted \$ rmdev -dev ent20 ent20 deleted \$ rmdev -dev en20 en20 deleted \$ rmdev -dev et20 et20 deleted \$ rmdev -dev ent22 ent22 deleted \$ rmdev -dev en22 en22 deleted \$ rmdev -dev et22 et22 deleted

After you remove the virtual devices, you can re-create virtual devices by using the **cfgdev** command. Or, you can re-create the devices through the IVM GUI and the virtual Ethernet bridge for virtual I/O clients in the **View/Modify Virtual Ethernet** panel, by following these steps:

a. In the **View/Modify Virtual Ethernet** panel, click **Initialize Virtual Ethernet**, as shown in Figure 5-12.

View/Modify Virtual Ethernet



Figure 5-12 Initialize Virtual Ethernet



b. Then, create the Virtual Ethernet Bridge, as shown in Figure 5-13. Click Apply.

Figure 5-13 Creating a Virtual Ethernet Bridge

5. Re-create the virtual I/O clients

Because the IVM does not have information for the virtual I/O clients, you must re-create them by using the IVM web interface. For more information about creating LPARs, refer to 4.2, "IVM graphical user interface" on page 50.

When you choose **Storage Type**, select **Assign existing virtual disks and physical volumes**, as shown in Figure 5-14.

You can also allow the IVM to create a virtual disk for you by selecting **Create virtual disk**, when needed.

**Volume group export:** Export any volume group that contains client data by using the **exportvg** command. After migrating, import the volume groups by using the **importvg** command. This is a more efficient method to migrate the client data without loss.

Create Dartition, Storag	step 5 of 0
Create Partition: Storag	ge rype Step 5 or 5
Name Memory Processors Ethernet ••• Storage Type	Storage Type You may create a new virtual disk or assign existing virtual disks and physical volumes which are not currently assigned to a partition. You will be able to assign optical devices such as a CD-ROM regardless of which choice you make.
Storage Virtual Fibre Channel Optical/Tape Summary	<ul> <li>Create virtual disk.</li> <li>Assign existing virtual disks and physical volumes.</li> <li>None</li> </ul>
< Back Net > Finish	Cancel Help

Figure 5-14 Create LPAR: Storage Type

6. Boot each virtual I/O client

## 5.1.10 Migration from an IVM environment to an HMC

There is no officially announced procedure to migrate from an IVM environment to the HMC.

If an HMC is connected to the system, the IVM interface is disabled immediately, effectively making it just a Virtual I/O Server partition. The managed system goes into recovery mode. After recovery completes, the HMC shows all of the LPARs without a profile. You must create one profile for each LPAR.

**Record configuration information:** Ensure that you carefully record all configuration information before you do this migration.

This can be migrated more easily compared to the reverse. The IVM environment must own all of the physical devices and there can be only one *Management Partition* per server, so there are no restrictions on server configuration that could affect a possible migration.



Figure 5-15 shows the general migration procedure from an IVM environment to the HMC.

Figure 5-15 General migration procedure from an IVM environment to the HMC

The following steps, as shown in Figure 5-15 on page 181, describe the general migration procedure from an IVM environment to the HMC:

1. Connect the Power Systems server to an HMC

The server is connected and recognized by the HMC, and the IVM interface is disabled immediately, effectively making it just a Virtual I/O Server partition, as shown in Figure 5-16.

Integrated Virtualization Manager	
Welcome padmin : vios1	Edit my profile   Help   Log out
Partition Management	View/Modify Partitions
<u>View/Modify Partitions</u> <u>View/Modify System Properties</u>	Problems occurred while processing the data. A summary of all problems for this page are listed below. Additional details for each problem may be located next to the field causing the problem.
I/O Adapter Management	
<u>View/Modify Host Ethernet Adapters</u> <u>View/Modify Virtual Ethernet</u> <u>View/Modify Physical Adapters</u>	<ul> <li>[VIOSE01010003-0245] Unable to perform operation because this partition does not have sufficient management authority.</li> </ul>
Virtual Storage Management	VIOSE01010003-0245] Unable to perform operation because this partition does not have sufficient
<u>View/Modify Virtual Storage</u>	management authority.
IVM Management	
<u>View/Modify User Accounts</u> <u>View/Modify TCP/IP Settings</u> <u>Guided Setup</u>	To perform an action on a partition, first select the partition or partitions, and then select the task.
Service Management	
Electronic Service Agent     Service Focal Point     Manage Serviceable Events     Service Utilities     Create Serviceable Event     Manage Dumps     Collect VPD Information     Updates     Backup/Restore     Application Logs     Monitor Tasks     Hardware Inventory	Partition Details         Image: Constraint of the second

Figure 5-16 IVM management after connecting the HMC

#### 2. Recover server configuration data to the HMC

Add the managed system to the HMC, then the managed system goes into Recovery mode, as shown in Figure 5-17. Right-click the managed system, then select **Recover Partition Data**  $\rightarrow$  **Restore profile data from HMC backup data**. Ensure that at least one of the LPARs is up and running; otherwise, the HMC might delete all of the LPARs.

🖉 hmc9: Hardware Management Co	nsole Workplace (V7R7.5.0.0) - Windows Internet Explorer provided by IBM	
ttps://172.16.20.111/hmc/connects/main	nulFrameset.jsp	
Hardware Management	Console	
	hscroo	t   Heip   Logoff
\$P @@ UU	Systems Management > Servers View:	Table 💙
Welcom e	Tasks Views Views	
🖃 📗 System s Managem en t	Select Name   Status  Available  Processing Units  Available  Avai	^
Servers     Acceleration	Image: State and State	
Custom Groups	Max Page Size: 500 Total: 1 Filtered: 1 Selected: 0	
System Plans		
📙 HMC Management		
1914 Service Management		
AU		
쉱 Updates 🕴		
	Tasks: Servers 🗟 🖻 📋	
	Connections     Add Managed System	
	пеясус седован сон	
Status: Attentions and Events		
	🔎 🛛 🥥 Internet 🖓 🗸	🔍 100% 🔹 🛒

Figure 5-17 HMC recovery mode

3. After the recovery completes, the HMC displays all partitions, in the same state as they were in IVM. The status resolves to the Operating state, as shown in Figure 5-18 and Figure 5-19 on page 184.

System	Systems Management > Servers View: Table 💌							*	
Tasks Views									
Select	Name		^	Status ^	Available Available	Available Memory (GB)	^	Reference Code \land	
	🚦 8233-E8B,	_SN061AA6P		A Operating	14.4	1	27.5		
	Max Page Size: 500 Total: 1 Filtered: 1 Selected: 0								

Figure 5-18 Managed System going to Operating state

System	Bystems Management > Servers > 8233-E8B_SN061AA6P								
Tasks 🔻 Views 🔻									
Select	Name ^	ID 🛆	Status ^	Processing 🔒	Memory (GB)	Active ^ Profile	Environment ^	Reference _ Code	
	vios1	1	Running	1.3	20		Virtual I/O Server		
	Ipar2_server1	3	Not Activated	0.1	60		AIX or Linux	00000000	
	Ipar3_server1	4	Not Activated	0.2	10		AIX or Linux	00000000	
	Max Page Size: 500 Total: 3 Filtered: 3 Selected: 0								

Figure 5-19 Virtual I/O Server at Operating state

4) Re-creating the partition profile

When the IVM is connected to the HMC, there is no profile so you must create one for both the Virtual I/O Server and the virtual I/O client.

To create the profile, do the following steps:

a. In the HMC, select the LPAR. Select Configuration  $\rightarrow$  Managed Profiles, as shown in Figure 5-20.

System	Systems Management > Servers > 8233-E8B_SN061AA6P							
	Tasks 🔻 💅 🖉 🕐 💕 😭 🔽 Filter							
Select	Name	^ ID 🛆 Status	^	Processing _ Units	Memory (GB)	Active ^ Profile	Environment ^	Reference 🔨 Code
	🛐 vios 1 🖻	Properties		1.3	20		Virtual I/O Server	
	Ipar2_s	Change Default Profile	/ated	0.1	60		AIX or Linux	00000000
	Ipar3_s	Operations	perations				AIX or Linux	00000000
		Configuration	Mana	ige Profiles				
		Hardware Information	Mana	ge ustom Group	is			
		Dynamic Logical Partitioning	Save	Current Configura	ation			

Figure 5-20 Selecting Manage Profiles in the HMC

b. In the new pop-up window, select  $\textbf{Actions} \rightarrow \textbf{Save Current Config},$  as shown in Figure 5-21.

	Managed Profiles vios1						
	Actions 🔻		ne oppene og pene og pene og pene og pene og pene og pene og				
ſ	New						
	Save Current Config	te resource configuration for the partition. You can					
ť	Edit 💟	y, and adapter assig	finitenes for a profile by calling				
1	Copy						
	Delete						
1	Activate Status						
	Close Help						

Figure 5-21 Saving the current configuration to a profile in the HMC

c. Then, select **New profile** and give the profile a name that you want, then select **OK**, as shown in Figure 5-22. This action creates a profile for the LPAR with current configurations.

Cours Doubling Courseling strengthered
Save Partition Configuration: VIOS1
If configuration changes have been made to a running partition, you may elect to save the partition's current configuration to a newly created profile or overwrite an existing profile. Saving to a new profile will not overwrite settings in the current profile.
Current profile :
Save Profile Options Overwrite existing profile: vios1
Cancel Help

Figure 5-22 Creating a profile with a current configuration

**Create a backup before migration:** Before migration from an IVM environment to an HMC, it is necessary to back up the Virtual I/O Server and virtual I/O client.

# 5.2 System maintenance

Operations such as *microcode updates* and *capacity on demand* (*CoD*) are available for the system that is hosting the IVM.

# 5.2.1 Microcode update

The IVM provides a convenient interface to generate a microcode survey of the managed system and to download and upgrade microcode.

The following steps describe how to update the device firmware:

1. From the Service Management menu in the navigation area, click **Updates**, then click the **Microcode Updates** tab in the work area.

**Updating with IBM BladeCenter:** If you are using BladeCenter, use the diag **command** menu to do the update.

2. Click **Generate New Survey**. This action generates a list of devices, as shown in Figure 5-23.

Updates ?
Management Partition Updates Microcode Updates
The microcode survey generates and displays a list of hardware devices and their current and available microcode levels. You may download the microcode updates. The install step will require you to log into the management partition via a terminal session, and run commands shown in the Download page.
You must supply the base path for the microcode updates. If you are retrieving them from a support website, the management partition must have network access to the website.
Microcode Survey Generation
Microcode download base path:
http://techsupport.services.ibm.com/server/mdownload3/
Generate New Survey
Microcode Survey Results
A microcode survey has not yet been completed. Enter the base path of for the microcode, and select Generate New Survey.

Figure 5-23 Microcode Survey Results

- From the Microcode Survey Results list, select one or more items to upgrade. Click the Download link in the task area.
- 4. Information is displayed about the selected devices, such as the available microcode level and the commands that you need to install the microcode update, as shown in Figure 5-24. Select the **Accept license** check box in the work area, and click **OK** to download the selected microcode and store it on the disk.

Downloa	d Microcode	updates		?			
You have chosen to download the following microcode updates. This process may take some time. You may modify the base path for the microcode updates in the previous screen. If you are retrieving them from a support website, the management partition must have network access to the website. The install step will require you to log into the management partition via a terminal session, and run commancs below for each update. Microcode download base path: http://techsupport.services.ibm.com/server/mdownload3/							
Type	Logical Device	Available Level	Impact	Install Commands			
Device	Device rmt0 2107 Take offline invscout -rpm `invscout -rpm `invsco						
Accept license (View license)							
ок са	ancel						

Figure 5-24 Download Microcode Updates

- 5. Log in to the IVM by using a terminal session.
- 6. Run the installation commands that are provided by the GUI in step 4.

If you are not able to connect to the GUI of the IVM and a system firmware update is needed, refer to 2.3, "Microcode update" on page 23 for the update procedure with a diagnostic CD.

# 5.2.2 Capacity on demand operations

Operations for *capacity on demand* (*CoD*) are available only through the ASMI menu, You must provide the necessary information to get a CoD code. The general information is available in the ASMI menu, as shown in Figure 5-25.

	Advanced Syste	em Management	Copyright © 2002, 2012 IBM Corporation. All rights reserved.
Log out User ID: ad	min	8233-E8B_SN061AA6P	AL730_087
<ul> <li>Expand all menus</li> <li>Collapse all menus</li> <li>Power/Restart C</li> <li>System Service</li> <li>System Configu</li> <li>Network Service</li> <li>Performance Se</li> <li>On Demand Util</li> <li>CoD Order Infor</li> <li>CoD Activation</li> <li>CoD Processor</li> <li>CoD Memory Inf</li> <li>CoD VET Inform</li> <li>VET Capability</li> <li>Concurrent Main</li> <li>Login Profile</li> </ul>	s control Aids ion ration ss tup tites mation formation formation formation settings stenance	CoD Order Information System type: 8233 System serial number: 06-1AA6P Card type: 52B6 Card serial number: 07-808100E Card ID: 0213204141420C5B	

Figure 5-25 CoD menu using ASMI

You can get a CoD code for a processor and memory, as shown in Figure 5-26 and Figure 5-27.

	Advanced Syst	em Management	Copyright © 2002, 2012 IBM Corporation. All rights reserved.
Log out User ID: ad	lmin	8233-E8B_SN061AA6P	AL730_087
<ul> <li>Expand all menus</li> <li>Collapse all menus</li> <li>Collapse all menus</li> <li>System Service</li> <li>System Service</li> <li>System Informat</li> <li>System Configu</li> <li>Network Service</li> <li>Performance Se</li> <li>On Demand Util</li> <li>CoD Order Infor</li> <li>CoD Activation</li> <li>CoD Recovery</li> <li>CoD Processor</li> <li>CoD Memory In</li> <li>CoD VET Inforn</li> <li>VET Capability</li> <li>Concurrent Main</li> <li>Login Profile</li> </ul>	s Control Aids ion ration es stup ities mation formation formation nation Settings ntenance	CoD Processor Information System type: 8233 System serial number: 06-1AA6P Card type: 52B6 Card serial number: 07-808100E Card ID: 0213204141420C5B Resource ID: 7714 Activated Resources: 0016 Sequence number: 0041 Entry check: 21 Installed processors: 0016 Permanent processors: 0016 Inactive processors: 0000 Configuration index value: 0000 Processor CCIN: 535B	

Figure 5-26 CoD Processor Information

IEM. Adv	vanced Syst	em Management	0	Copyright © 2002, 2012 IBM Corporation. All rights reserved.
Log out User ID: admin		8233-E8B_SN06	ilaa6P	AL730_087
<ul> <li>Expand all menus</li> <li>Collapse all menus</li> <li>Power/Restart Control</li> <li>System Service Aids</li> <li>System Information</li> <li>System Configuration</li> <li>Network Services</li> <li>Performance Setup</li> <li>On Demand Utilities CoD Order Information CoD Activation CoD Recovery CoD Command CoD Processor Information CoD VET Information VET Capability Setting</li> <li>Concurrent Maintenand</li> <li>Login Profile</li> </ul>	ation on Is ce	CoD Memory Information System type: 8233 System serial number: 06-1AA6P Card type: 52B6 Card serial number: 07-808100E Card ID: 0213204141420C5B Resource ID: MODD Activated Resources: 0000 Sequence number: 0040 Entry check: 32 Installed memory (GB): 0128 Permanent memory (GB): 0128 Inactive memory (GB): 0000		

Figure 5-27 CoD Memory Information

You can activate the *virtualization* feature through CoD. For more information about this feature, refer to 2.5, "Virtualization feature activation" on page 29.

When the CoD code is ready, you can apply it either from the ASMI or from IVM to activate.

Figure 5-28 shows the way to activate through ASMI.

	Advanced Sys	tem Management	Copyright © 2002, 2012 IBM Corporation. All rights reserved.
Log out User ID: ad	min	8233-E8B_SN061AA6P	AL730_087
<ul> <li>Expand all menus</li> <li>Collapse all menus</li> <li>Power/Restart C</li> <li>System Service</li> <li>System Informat</li> <li>System Configu</li> <li>Network Service</li> <li>Performance Se</li> <li>On Demand Util</li> <li>CoD Order Infor</li> <li>CoD Activation</li> <li>CoD Recovery</li> <li>CoD Command</li> <li>CoD Processor</li> <li>CoD VET Inform</li> <li>VET Capability</li> <li>Concurrent Mair</li> <li>Login Profile</li> </ul>	s Control Aids ion ration ss tup ities mation Information formation formation settings ntenance	CoD Activation Continue	

Figure 5-28 CoD Activation through ASMI

Figure 5-29 shows the way to activate through IVM. This process works only to change from the PowerVM Standard to the Express or Enterprise editions, in the **IVM Management**  $\rightarrow$  **Enter PowerVM Edition Key** panel.

Enter PowerVM Edition Key						
To enable the PowerVM Edition feature, contact your sales representative to obtain an PowerVM Edition key, and enter it below.						
PowerVM Edition key:						
Apply Reset						

Figure 5-29 CoD activation through IVM

# 5.2.3 Logical partition maintenance

Each LPAR that is hosted by the IVM works like a stand-alone system. For example, you can back up and restore, boot in maintenance mode, and do an operating system update or a migration.

## 5.2.4 Backup of the operating system

There are many ways to back up LPARs that are hosted by the IVM, depending on which operating system is installed.

The main possibilities for the AIX operating system include the following scenarios:

- In general, the mksysb command creates a bootable image of the rootvg volume group either in a file or onto a tape. If your system does not have sufficient space, you can use NFS to mount space from another server system to create a system backup to file. However, the file systems must be writable. Because there is no virtual tape device, tape backup cannot be done locally for the client partitions, but only by a remotely operated tape device. Such a backup can also be done by using more software such as the IBM Tivoli® Storage Manager.
- The mkcd command creates a system backup image (mksysb) to a CD-recordable (CD-R) or DVD-recordable (DVD-RAM) media from the system rootvg or from a previously created mksysb image. Multiple volumes are possible for backups over 4 GB. You can create a /mkcd file system that is very large (1.5 GB for CD or 9 GB for DVDs). The /mkcd file system can then be mounted onto the clients when they want to create a backup CD or DVD for their systems.

**Large backups:** When you create large backups (DVD-sized backups larger than 2 GB) with the **mkcd** command, the file systems must be large-file enabled and this requires that the **ulimit** values are set to *unlimited*.

 Network Installation Management (NIM) creates a system backup image from a logical partition rootvg using the network.

For more information about creating system backups, see this website:

http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/pseries/v5r3/index.jsp?topic=/com.ibm.aix .install/doc/insgdrf/create\_sys\_backup.htm

#### 5.2.5 Restoration of the operating system

The restoration process is the same as on stand-alone systems. Follow these main steps:

- 1. Log in to the IVM.
- Open a virtual terminal for the LPAR to be installed with the mkvt command, providing the ID of the LPAR to be restored.
- 3. Start the LPAR in SMS mode.
- 4. Select the boot device that was used for the backup such as CD, DVD-RAM, or network.
- 5. Boot the LPAR.
- 6. Follow the specific restore procedures of the operating system.

# 5.3 Command logs

All IVM actions are logged in to the system. The log contains all the commands that the IVM web GUI runs and all IVM-specific commands that are issued by an administrator on the command line.

The log contains the following information for each action:

- User name
- Date and time
- ► The command, which includes all the parameters

The following steps describe how to access the log:

- 1. Under the Service Management menu in the navigation area, click Application Logs.
- 2. In the work area, use the provided filters to restrict the log search and then click **Apply**. This action generates the selected log entries, as shown in Figure 5-30.

Integrated Virtualization Manager							IBM.
Welcome padmin : vios2							Edit my profile   Help   Log out
Partition Management	Application Logs						
<u>View/Modify Partitions</u> <u>View/Modify System Properties</u> <u>View/Modify Shared Memory Pool</u>	The application logs are events and errors generated by the management partition. To modify the selection criteria, select th filters and then select Apply. To perform an action, first select a log and then the task.						
I/O Adapter Management	Select Fi	ilters					
<u>View/Modify Host Ethernet Adapters</u> <u>View/Modify Virtual Ethernet</u> <u>View/Modify Physical Adapters</u> <u>View Virtual Fibre Channel</u>	Log type: V Fatal V Error V Warning V Information V Audit Client type:						
Virtual Storage Management	Com	nmand line	interface	e 🔽 A	ccess process	🛛 🔽 Web in	terface
<u>View/Modify Virtual Storage</u> IVM Management	Application:						
<u>View/Modify User Accounts</u> <u>View/Modify TCP/IP Settings</u> <u>Guided Setup</u> <u>Enter PowerVM Edition Key</u>	Time period: 10 Minutes V Apply Reset						
System Plan Management	Selected Log Entries						
<u>Manage System Plans</u>		) 😵   [	Properti	es			
Service Management  Electronic Service Agent Service Focal Point	Date and ∽ Fime	Loq Type	Application	<u>Client</u> <u>Type</u>	Description		
Manage Serviceable Events     Service Utilities     Create Serviceable Event	n r	4/ 9: AM	/19/12 :45:15 M	Audit	lpmutil (11141350)	Command line interface	<u>Ipmutil -o isapready</u>
<u>Manage Dumps</u> <u>Collect VPD Information</u> <u>Updates</u> Backup/Restore	E r	4/ 9: AN	/19/12 :45:15 M	Audit	lpmutil (11141350)	Command line interface	Command Ipmutil returned 12. Additional messages:
Application Logs     Monitor Tasks     Hardware Inventory	n r	4/ 9: AN	/19/12 :45:14 M	Audit	lpmutil (8061158)	Command line interface	Ipmutil -o isapready
	<					Ш	>

Figure 5-30 Application command logs

# 5.4 Integration with IBM Director

The IVM includes an agent that allows full integration and management through the *IBM Director* console. From this centralized console, you can monitor critical resources and events with automated alerts or responses to predefined conditions. You also have control over the hardware to remotely start, stop, and reset the servers and LPARs. You can also examine the software and hardware inventory and deploy new applications or updates across the environment. All processes can be monitored by the console too.

In a few steps, you can look after your IVM managed system and have access to these options:

Access the IBM Systems Director for the Power Systems console. Click the Resource Explorer link in the left side menu or in the Plug-ins tab below the Discovery Manager options, as shown in Figure 5-31.



Figure 5-31 Systems Director: Plug-ins tab

# In the Resource Explorer panel, select Groups by System Type, as shown in Figure 5-32.

IBM* Systems Director		Welcome root Pro	oblems 0 0 0	Compliance 08 01 Help   Logout IBM
View: All tasks	Home X	Resource Ex X		Select Action 1
<ul> <li>Find a Task</li> <li>Find a Resource</li> <li>Resource Explorer</li> <li>Welcome</li> <li>My Startup Pages</li> </ul>	Resource	Explorer (View Members)		? = 0
Automation				
		Create Group Actions	<ul> <li>Search the table.</li> </ul>	Search
1 Inventory	Select	Name 🔷	Type 🗘	Description 🗘
Energy		🖪 Active Energy Manager Group	Static: Group	Groups containing Energy Managed resources
🗄 Release Management		🕒 All Network Systems (0)	Dynamic: System	Contains All Network Systems
🗄 Security		🗄 All Operating Systems (34)	Dynamic: Operating System	Contains all operating systems that can be managed
System Configuration		님 All Storage Systems (0)	Dynamic: Storage Subsyst	Contains all storage systems
System Status and Health		🔓 All Systems (52)	Dynamic: System	Contains all systems that can be managed including $\boldsymbol{s}$
⊕ Task Management		Groups by Access (3)	Static: Group	Contains groups based on their access state: None, P
Remote Access		Groups by Agent (3)	Static: Group	Contains groups based on the agent types running or
1 Settings		🔁 Groups by Status (2)	Static: Group	Contains groups based on their status: critical, warnin
		Groups by System Type (8)	Static: Group	Contains groups based on system types
		🔓 Other Groups (2)	Static: Group	Contains additional groups that can isolate different t
		Personal Groups (1)	Static: Group	Contains groups optimized for each individual user
		🔁 Service and Support Groups	Static: Group	Contains groups for Service and Support Manager
		🖫 Update Groups (13)	Static: Group	Contains groups for managing updates
		🖫 Virtualization Groups (14)	Static: Group	Contains groups for managing virtual systems
	K Pag	ge1of1 ▶ ⊨ 1_ ♦   Sele	cted: 0 Total: 14 Filtered	): 14

Figure 5-32 Resource Explorer window

#### ► In the next view, select **Power Systems** servers, as shown in Figure 5-33.

IBM <sup>®</sup> Systems Director			Welcome root Problems	₀ <b>0 0</b> 0 c	ompliance 0 0 Help   Logout	IBM.
View: All tasks	F	lome ×	Resource Ex ×		Select Action	*
= Home						
<ul> <li>Find a Task</li> <li>Find a Resource</li> </ul>						^
Resource Explorer	R	esource B	Explorer		2	
= Welcome						
<ul> <li>My Startup Pages</li> </ul>		Groups	> Groups by System Type (View M	embers)		
Automation						
		A	Actions 🔻 Search the tabl	e Search		
1 Inventory		Select	Name 💠	Туре 🗘	Description	\$
	4		🔓 Chassis Systems (13)	Static: Group	Contains groups related to Chassis	
🕀 Release Management			🔁 Generic Systems (0)	Dynamic: System	Contains systems, devices, and services not a	ssi
E Security			🖫 Network Systems (4)	Static: Group	Contains groups related to network systems	
System Configuration			🔁 Operating Systems (5)	Static: Group	Contains groups based on operating systems	
E System Status and Health			Power Systems (7)	Static: Group	Contains groups for Power Systems	
🛨 Task Management			🔁 Storage Systems (6)	Static: Group	Contains groups of storage systems	
Remote Access     ■			🔁 System x (5)	Static: Group	Contains groups of System x servers	
1 Settings			🔓 System z (5)	Static: Group	Contains groups of System z servers	
						~

Figure 5-33 Resource Explorer: Groups by System Type

► Then, select the IVM and Managed Power Systems Servers, as shown in Figure 5-34.

IBM* Systems Director			Welcome root Problems	0 🔕 0	Δ	Compliance	0	0 Help   Logout	BM.
View: All tasks	н	lome ×	Resource Ex ×					Select Action	*
Home     Find a Task     Find a Resource     Resource Explorer     Welcome	R	esource E	xplorer					2 <b> </b> -	-
<ul> <li>My Startup Pages</li> </ul>		Groups >	• Groups by System Type > Power S	ystems (Vie	w Mer	nbers)			
			Search the table	Searc	h				
		A							
1 Inventory	_	Select	Name		\$	Type 🗘	Desc	ription	
Energy     ■     Energy			🖪 AIX/Linux Virtual Servers (8)			Dynamic: System	Cont	ains virtual servers with AIX/L	.i
🕀 Release Management			HMC and Managed Power System	ems Servers	(5)	Dynamic: System	Cont	ains HMCs and Power System	IS
E Security			🖪 IBM i Virtual Servers (0)			Dynamic: System	Cont	ains virtual servers with IBM i	·   -
System Configuration			🔁 IVM and Managed Power Syste	ms Servers (	(2)	Dynamic: System	Cont	ains IVMs and Power Systems	5
🗄 System Status and Health			Power Servers (0)			Dynamic: System	Cont	ains physical Power Systems s	s
🗄 Task Management			🖪 Virtual I/O Server (VIOS) Appli	ances (3)		Dynamic: System	Cont	ains systems running Virtual I	I
Remote Access			L Virtual I/O Servers (VIOS) (3)			Dynamic: System	Cont	ains virtual servers with Virtua	9
									~

Figure 5-34 Resource Explorer: Power Systems view

Now you are able to see all the servers that are managed by the IVM, as shown in Figure 5-35. It is possible to have access to their partitions (and do most of the IVM operations), validating it with a **padmin** user and password.

IBM <sup>®</sup> Systems Director			Welcome root Problems	₀⊗ ₀ <u>∩</u> ⊂	Compliance 0	0 AHelp	Logout
View: All tasks	н	lome ×	Resource Ex ×			Sele	ct Action 💌
= Home							
Find a Task							^
Find a Resource     Resource Evalurer	R	esource E	xplorer				? _ 🗆
<ul> <li>Welcome</li> </ul>							
My Startup Pages							6.e
		Groups >	Type System System	ns <sup>IVM al</sup> Memb	ers)	Systems Servers	(View
		Ac	tions 🔻 Search the tab	e Search			
1 Inventory					_		
1 Energy		Select	Name 🗘	State 🗘	Access 🗘	Problems 🗘	Compliance
I Release Management	4		10-59C72	Started	Partial access	Ск	ОК
			M50_1_9409-M50-105	Started	Reartial access	🗾 ок	🖉 ок
E Security			🗸 lpar1_server1	Started	🗾 ок	🗾 ок	🖉 ок 📃
System Configuration			Ipar2_server2	Started	🗾 ок	🗾 ок	ок
System Status and Health			LPAR4_Linux	Started	ОК	🔤 ок	ОК
🗄 Task Management			vios1	Started	Partial access	ок	<b>о</b> к
Remote Access     ■							
							~

Figure 5-35 Resource Explorer: Power Systems servers view

**Systems controlled by HMC and IVM:** For more information about managing the systems that are controlled by HMC and IVM, refer to this website:

http://pic.dhe.ibm.com/infocenter/director/pubs/index.jsp?topic=%2Fcom.ibm.dire
ctor.power.helps.doc%2Ffqm0\_t\_managing\_hmc\_ivm.html

# 5.5 User Accounts

After IVM installation, you can access the IVM web browser and also the Virtual I/O Server command line by logging in with a padmin user ID, which is the default user for the IVM/Virtual I/O Server.

It is possible to create other users for IVM by following these steps:

 Access the IVM Management menu and click View/Modify User Accounts, as shown in Figure 5-36, and click Create User.

Integrated Virtualization Manager					IBM.		
Welcome padmin : vios2					Edit my profile   Help   Log out		
Partition Management	View/Modify Use	er Accounts			2		
<u>View/Modify Partitions</u>	To perform an action, first select a user account or user accounts, and then select the task.						
<u>View/Modify System Properties</u> <u>View/Modify Shared Memory Pool</u>	User Accounts						
I/O Adapter Management		* Create User	Remove accourt	t Change password R	roperties		
View/Modify Host Ethernet Adapters		☆ Create User	Remove account	Change password	roperties		
<ul> <li><u>View/Modify Virtual Ethernet</u></li> <li><u>View/Modify Physical Adapters</u></li> </ul>	Select	<u>User ID</u> ^	Role	Account Locked	Account Expires		
<u>View Virtual Fibre Channel</u>		<u>dmin</u>	padmin	No	Never		
Virtual Storage Management	L						
<u>View/Modify Virtual Storage</u>							
IVM Management							
<u>View/Modify User Accounts</u> View/Modify TCP/IP Settings							
Guided Setup     Enter PowerVM Edition Key							
System Plan Management							
Manage System Plans							
Service Management							
Electronic Service Acent							
Service Focal Point							
<u>Manage Serviceable Events</u> Service Utilities							
<u>Create Serviceable Event</u> Manage Dumps							
<u>Collect VPD Information</u>							
Updates     Backup/Restore							
Application Logs							
<u>Monitor Tasks</u> <u>Hardware Inventory</u>							

Figure 5-36 View/Modify User Accounts window

► In the opened window, as shown in Figure 5-37, type in the User ID and Password. Then, choose the user's role and click **OK**.

Create User Accoun	t	?				
To create a user account, enter the user ID, password and role information. You can use the Properties task in View/Modify User Accounts to change the user and password settings after you create a user account.						
User						
* User ID:	New_User					
* Password:	•••••					
* Confirm password:	•••••					
Role						
⊙ View/Modify						
◯ View Only						
O Development engi	neer					
O Service represent	ative					
OK Cancel						

Figure 5-37 Create User Account menu

• After that, you can see the new user, as shown in Figure 5-38.

Integrated Virtualization Manager					IN.			
Welcome padmin : vios2					Edit my profile   Help   Log out			
Partition Management	View/Modify	User Accounts			2			
<u>View/Modify Partitions</u> <u>View/Modify System Properties</u> <u>View/Modify Shared Memory Pool</u>	To perform an	To perform an action, first select a user account or user accounts, and then select the task. User Accounts						
I/O Adapter Management		😵 🛛 米 Create User	Remove account	Change password Properties				
<u>View/Modify Host Ethernet Adapters</u> <u>View/Modify Virtual Ethernet</u> <u>View/Modify Physical Adapters</u>	Select	User ID ^	Role	Account Locked	Account Expires			
<u>View Virtual Fibre Channel</u>		<u>padmin</u>	padmin	No	Never			
Virtual Storage Management		New User	View/Modify	No	Never			
<u>View/Modify Virtual Storage</u>								
IVM Management								
<u>View/Modify User Accounts</u> <u>View/Modify TCP/IP Settings</u> <u>Guided Setup</u> <u>Enter PowerVM Edition Key</u>								
System Plan Management								
<u>Manage System Plans</u> Service Management								
Electronic Service Agent     Service Focal Point     Manage Serviceable Events     Service Utilities     Create Serviceable Event     Manage Dumps     Collect VPD Information     Updates     Backur/Restore								
Application Logs     Monitor Tasks     Hardware Inventory								

Figure 5-38 View/Modify User Accounts panel with the new user

 After the user creation, it is possible to edit User Properties, under the User Settings and Password Settings tabs, as shown in Figure 5-39 and Figure 5-40.

<b>User Properties</b>	: New_User	^
User Settings	Password Settings	
User ID: Role: Account locked:	New_User View/Modify	
Login retries: Account expirat	0 ion status:	
Month: 0		
Day: 0 Year: 0		
		~
OK Cancel		

Figure 5-39 User Properties window: User Settings tab

User Properties: New_User	?
User Settings Password Settings	
Weeks before previous password can be reused: Number of previous passwords not to be reused: Weeks until password expires: Weeks after password expiration to allow password change:	0 0 0 -1
Maximum consecutive characters:	8
Minimum password length:	0
Minimum non-alphabetic characters:	0
Password warning days:	330
1	
OK Cancel	

Figure 5-40 User properties window: Password Settings tab

 By the first time this new user logs in to the IVM, it prompts the user to change the password, as shown in Figure 5-41.

Integrated Virtualization Manager						
Welcome, please enter your information.						
Your password has expired. You are required to change your password. Choose a new one. Once your password is changed, you will have to log in with your new password.						
*User ID:						
New_User						
* Old password:						
•••••						
*New password:						
* Confirm password:						
•••••						
Change Password Cancel						
* Required field						

Figure 5-41 New user first login: change password request

# 5.6 IBM Electronic Service Agent

The *IBM Electronic Service Agent*<sup>TM</sup> (*ESA*) is used to monitor hardware problems and send the information automatically to IBM support. It has the following attributes:

- Submits the problems to IBM through the network
- Is disabled by default

To use the ESA feature, follow these steps:

1. Configure and start the ESA by using **cfgassist** and then select **Electronic Service Agent**, as shown in Figure 5-42. Press **Enter**.

	Config Assist	for VIOS	
Move cursor to de	esired item and pre	ess Enter.	
Set Date and T: Change Password Set System Sect VIOS TCP/IP Con Install and Upd Storage Manager Devices Performance Role Based Acce Shared Storage	imeZone ds urity nfiguration date Software ment ess Control (RBAC) Pools vice Agent		
F1=Help F9=Shell	F2=Refresh F10=Exit	F3=Cancel Enter=Do	F8=Image

Figure 5-42 Config Assist for VIOS menu to select Electronic Service Agent

2. Then, select Configure Electronic Service Agent, as shown in Figure 5-43. Press Enter.



Figure 5-43 Electronic Service Agent menu to configure the ESA
3. Enter the company name and contact details for configuring the Electronic Service Agent, as shown in Figure 5-44. Then, press **Enter** to confirm the configuration.

	Configuring Ele	ectronic Ser	vice Agent		
Type or select values Press Enter AFTER mak	; in entry fields. Ting all desired char	nges.			
			[Entry Fi	ields]	
* Company name			[]		
Service contact					
* Name of the contact	; person		[]		
* Telephone number of	the contact person		[]		
* Email address (myus	erid@mycompany.com)		[]		
* Country or region of	of contact person				+
IBM ID			[]		
System location					
* Telephone number wh	ere the system is lo	ocated	[]		
* Country or region w	where the system is l	located			+
* Street address when	e the system is loca	ated	[]		
* City where the syst	em is located		[]		
* State or province w	where the system is l	located	[]		
* Postal code where t	he system is located	1	[]		
* Building, floor, an	nd office of the syst	em	[]		
Operational action					
t Port number on which	h to receive connect	ione	[5024]		#
- Fore number on white	I CO LECEIVE CONNECC	.10115	[3024]		#
F1=Help	F2=Refresh	F3=Cance	1	F4=List	
F5=Reset	F6=Command	F7=Edit		F8=Image	
F9=Shell	F10=Exit	Enter=Do			

Figure 5-44 Details of company to configure the Electronic Service Agent

 When configured, start the Electronic Service Agent by selecting cfgassist → Electronic Service Agent → Start Electronic Service Agent, as shown in Figure 5-45. This action starts the service.

Electronic Service Agent								
Move cursor to desired item and press Enter.								
Configure Electronic Service Agent Configure Service Connectivity <mark>Start Electronic Service Agent</mark> Stop Electronic Service Agent								
Verify Electronic Service Agent Connectivity								
F1=Help F2=Refresh F3=Cancel F8=Image F9=Shell F10=Exit Enter=Do								

Figure 5-45 Starting Electronic Service Agent

### 5.7 Service Focal Point

IVM has a facility to manage all the hardware errors that occur in the system. It logs only one error for all the common errors occurred across the LPARs so that you can track errors easily.

You can do the following tasks when you use Service Focal Point. These tasks are described in more detail in the sections that follow:

- Manage serviceable events
- Service utilities
  - Create serviceable events
  - Manage system and service processor dumps
- Collect vital product data (VPD) information

### 5.7.1 Manage serviceable events

You can *manage all serviceable events* easily in a customized manner. This feature lists the problems with a problem number, reference code, ESA request number, status, reported times, and failing unit.

You can customize the view in the following ways to easily track each problem:

- Event status
- Reference code
- Problem number
- Number of days
- Reporting unit
- ► Failing unit
- Field-replaceable unit (FRU) part number, and location code

Figure 5-46 describes the *Manage Serviceable Events* window.

Manage Serviceable Eve	ents					2
Update selection criteria to	change view of service	eable events.				
Serviceable Event Sele	ction Criteria					
Serviceable event status:	Open 💌	Reference cod	e:			
Problem number:		Number of day	vs to view: 7	¥		
Reporting unit:		FRU part numb	ber:			
Failing unit:		FRU location o	ode:			
Apply Reset						
Selected Serviceable Events						
D View associated FRUs Close event Properties						
Select Problem A Number	ReferenceESA SeCodeRequire	ervice <u>Status</u>	First Reported Time	Last Reported Time	<u>Failing</u> <u>Unit</u>	Serviceable Event Text

Figure 5-46 Window which is used to Manage Serviceable Events

#### 5.7.2 Service utilities

The following *service utilities* are available in the IVM:

- ► Use the *create serviceable event* feature for any problem that you notice.
- ► Use the option to connect to the *Advanced System Management Interface (ASMI)*. The following tasks can be handled with the ASMI:
  - Easy Identification of the problem, based on the reference *light-emitting diodes* (*LEDs*).
  - Check for correctness of the hardware parts by doing a *lamp test*.
  - Easily manage system and service processor dumps.
- ► A *diagnostic tool* is available in the Virtual I/O Server restricted shell.

#### Create serviceable event

You can report any hardware problem to IBM through this window. This feature uses internet access to reach IBM support. View this feature in Figure 5-47.

Create Serviceable Event		2
To report a problem, enter th	problem description.	
Problem description:		
Apply Reset		

Figure 5-47 Create Serviceable Event window to reach IBM support

#### Manage system and service processor dumps

You can manage *system and service processor dumps* in this view. This feature allows you to download, check the size and type of the dump, and see when the dump occurred. See Figure 5-48 for a view of the Manage Dumps window.

Manage Dumps							
To perform an action on a dump, first select the dump or dumps, and then select the task.							
Dumps	Dumps						
Delete Download							
Select	Name ^	Type	<u>Date</u>	<u>Size</u>			

Figure 5-48 Window to manage dumps

### 5.8 Application logs

Events and errors of applications that are generated in the management partition can be easily managed in the IVM.

The logs can be customized by the *log type* or *where* you got the error (whether at the command line or web interface). The log can also be customized by *application* and by the *time gap*. See Figure 5-49 for a view of the Application Logs window.

Application Logs							
The application logs are events and errors generated by the management partition. To modify the selection criteria, select the desired filters and then select Apply. To perform an action, first select a log and then the task.							
Select Filters							
Log type:							
🗹 Fatal 🗹 Error 🗹 Warning 🗹 Information 🗹 Audit							
Client type:							
☑ Command line interface ☑ Access process ☑ Web interface							
Application:							
Time period: 10 Minutes 🕶							
Apply Reset							
Selected Log Entries							
Properties							
Select     User ID     Date and Time     Log Type     Application     Client Type     Description							

Figure 5-49 Window to customize the application logs

### 5.9 Monitoring tasks

In IVM, you can view and monitor the most recent 40 tasks. All actions that a user can do in the GUI become *tasks*. All tasks are audited at the task level. Each task can have subtasks; the status of each subtask is managed. When you perform a task, the user gets a *Busy* dialog indicating that the task is running. You can go away from the page, and do other tasks.

To view the properties of the tasks, follow these steps:

- 1. In the Service Management menu, click **Monitor Tasks**. The Monitor Tasks panel opens.
- 2. Select the task for which you want to view the properties, as shown in Figure 5-50.

Integrated Virtualization Manager				1////	20	IBM				
Welcome padmin : vios1				E	Edit my profile   H	ielp   Log ou				
Partition Management	Monitor	Tasks				?				
<u>View/Modify Partitions</u> <u>View/Modify System Properties</u> <u>View/Modify Shared Memory Pool</u>	The last 40 tasks that have been run from the web interface on the system are listed below. Select the task to view it's properties.									
I/O Adapter Management						_				
<u>View/Modify Host Ethernet Adapters</u> <u>View/Modify Virtual Ethernet</u>		Properties								
<u>View/Modify Physical Adapters</u> View Virtual Fibre Channel	Select	Name	<u>Status</u>	<u>Start Time</u> 🗸	Task Duration	User ID				
Virtual Storage Management	R	Modify partition properties	Successful	9/20/12 3:38:32 PM	00:00:00	padmin				
<u>View/Modify Virtual Storage</u>	Õ	Delete partition	Successful	9/20/12 3:36:22 PM	00:00:08	padmin				
IVM Management View/Modify User Accounts	0	Modify partition properties	Successful	9/20/12 3:36:01 PM	00:00:00	padmin				
<u>View/Modify TCP/IP Settings</u> <u>Guided Setup</u>	0	Activate	Successful	9/20/12 3:33:15 PM	00:00:00	padmin				
Enter PowerVM Edition Key Service Management	0	Modify partition properties	Successful	9/20/12 3:32:58 PM	00:00:06	padmin				
Electronic Service Agent     Service Focal Point	0	Modify virtual Fibre Channel port properties	Failed	9/20/12 3:32:23 PM	00:00:00	padmin				
Manage Serviceable Events     Service Utilities	0	Modify virtual Fibre Channel port properties	Failed	9/20/12 3:32:21 PM	00:00:00	padmin				
<u>Create Serviceable Event</u> <u>Manage Dumps</u> Collect VPD Information	0	Modify virtual Fibre Channel port properties	Failed	9/20/12 3:31:59 PM	00:00:00	padmin				
<u>Updates</u> <u>Backup/Restore</u>	0	Modify virtual Fibre Channel port properties	Failed	9/20/12 3:31:36 PM	00:00:00	padmin				
Application Logs     Monitor Tasks     Hardware Inventory	0	Modify virtual Ethernet	Failed	9/20/12 3:30:27 PM	00:00:00	padmin				
<u>nardware inventory</u>	0	Modify partition properties	Successful	9/20/12 3:29:43 PM	00:00:00	padmin				
	0	Activate	Successful	9/20/12 3:25:37 PM	00:00:00	padmin				

Figure 5-50 Monitor Tasks: the last 40 tasks

3. Click **Properties** (shown in Figure 5-50). The **Task Properties** window opens, as shown in Figure 5-51.

Task Properties: Modify partition properties         ?           A task consists of one or more steps. In general, if a step fails, all subsequent steps will be canceled. The percent complete of each step is monitored separately, however the value may         ?							
not be known. Task Overview							
Name	Status	:	Start Time	Task Duration	User ID		
Modify partition properties	Successful	9/20/	12 3:38:32 PM	00:00:00	padmin		
Task Steps			_				
Step Name	Stat	us	Step Duration	Percent Co	omplete		
Modify partition properties	Success	sful	00:00:00	100%			
Assign storage resources Successful 00:00:00 100%							
Cancel							

Figure 5-51 Task Properties

4. Click **Cancel** to close the Task Properties window. The Monitor Tasks panel opens.

You can also click the hyperlink of the task for which you want to view the properties. See more about hyperlinks in the following section.

### 5.10 Hardware inventory

From the *Hardware Inventory* menu, it is possible to see all the physical and virtual devices from the server, as shown in Figure 5-52. If you click **Configure Devices**, you can update the window in case there are any new devices that are not yet shown.

Integrated Virtualization Manager							
Welcome padmin : vios2				Edit my profile   Help   Log			
Partition Management	Hardware Inventory						
<u>View/Modify Partitions</u> <u>View/Modify System Properties</u> <u>View/Modify Shared Memory Pool</u>	Below is a listing of hardware devices visible to the management partition. Click on <b>Configure Devices</b> to add any available devices that are not visible to the management partition.						
I/O Adapter Management	Confi	gure Devic	es				
<u>View/Modify Host Ethernet Adapters</u> <u>View/Modify Virtual Ethernet</u> <u>View/Modify Physical Adapters</u>	Device	<u>Status</u>	<u>Description</u>	Physical Location Code			
<ul> <li><u>View Virtual Fibre Channel</u></li> </ul>	cd0	Available	SATA DVD-RAM Drive	U78A0.001.DNWGPL0-P2-D2			
Virtual Storage Management	Client_data	Defined	Volume group				
View/Modify Virtual Storage	cluster0	Available	Cluster Node				
	en0	Defined	Standard Ethernet Network Interface				
	en1	Defined	Standard Ethernet Network Interface				
<u>View/Modity User Accounts</u> View/Modify TCP/IP Settings	en2	Available	Standard Ethernet Network Interface				
<u>Guided Setup</u>	en3	Defined	Standard Ethernet Network Interface				
Enter PowerVM Edition Key	en5	Defined	Standard Ethernet Network Interface				
System Plan Management	en6	Defined	Standard Ethernet Network Interface				
Manage System Plans	en7	Defined	Standard Ethernet Network Interface				
Service Management	en8	Defined	Standard Ethernet Network Interface				
	en9	Defined	Standard Ethernet Network Interface				
Electronic Service Agent     Service Focal Point	en10	Defined	Standard Ethernet Network Interface				
Manage Serviceable Events	en11	Defined	Standard Ethernet Network Interface				
Service Utilities     Create Serviceable Event	en12	Defined	Standard Ethernet Network Interface				
<u>Manage Dumps</u>	en13	Defined	Standard Ethernet Network Interface				
<u>Collect VPD Information</u> <u>Updates</u> Backun/Restore	ent0	Available	2-Port 10/100/1000 Base-TX PCI-X Adapter (14108902)	U78A0.001.DNWGPL0-P1-C4-T1			
Application Logs     Monitor Tasks	ent1	Available	2-Port 10/100/1000 Base-TX PCI-X Adapter (14108902)	U78A0.001.DNWGPL0-P1-C4-T2			
Hardware Inventory	ent2	Available	Shared Ethernet Adapter				
	ent3	Available	EtherChannel / IEEE 802.3ad Link Aggregation				

Figure 5-52 Hardware Inventory window

# Α

### **IVM and HMC feature summary**

Table A-1 provides a comparison between the Integrated Virtualization Manager (IVM) and the Hardware Management Console (HMC).

	Integrated Virtualization Manager (IVM)	Hardware Management Console (HMC)
Physical footprint	Integrated into the server	A desktop or rack-mounted appliance
Installation	Installed with the Virtual I/O Server (optical or network). Preinstall option available on some systems.	Appliance is preinstalled. Reinstall using optical media or network is supported.
Managed operating systems supported	AIX, Linux, and IBM i	AIX, Linux, and IBM i
Virtual console support	AIX, and Linux virtual console support	AIX, Linux, and IBM i virtual console support
User security	Password authentication with support for either full or ready-only authorities	Password authentication with granular control of task-based authorities and object-based authorities
Network security	-Firewall support via command line -Web server SSL support	-Integrated firewall -SSL support for clients and for communications with managed systems
Multiple system support	One IVM per server	One HMC can manage multiple servers

Table A-1 IVM and HMC comparison at a glance

	Integrated Virtualization Manager (IVM)	Hardware Management Console (HMC)
Redundancy	One IVM per server	Multiple HMCs can manage the same system for HMC redundancy
Maximum number of partitions supported	Firmware maximum	Firmware maximum
Uncapped partition support	Yes	Yes
Partition Mobility	Yes, between 2 IVM managed AIX or Linux systems. LPM of an IBM i partition managed by IVM is currently not supported	Yes, between two systems managed by a management console
OS level shutdown command	Yes on AIX and Linux. OS level shutdown command is not available for IBMi partition	Yes
Host Ethernet Adapter (Integrated Virtual Ethernet)	Yes	Yes
Multiple Shared Processor Pool	No, default pool only	Yes
Other POWER7 functions (share while active, partition priority, etc.)	Yes	Yes
Dynamic Resource Movement (dynamic LPAR)	Yes - full support	Yes - full support
I/O Support for AIX and Linux	Virtual and Direct	Virtual and Direct
I/O Support for i/OS	Virtual only	Virtual and Direct
Maximum # of virtual LANs	4096	4096
Fix/update process for Manager	Virtual I/O Server fixes and updates	Management Console e-fixes and release updates
Adapter microcode updates	Inventory scout	Inventory scout
Firmware updates	Virtual I/O Server firmware update tools (not concurrent)	Service Focal Point with concurrent firmware updates
I/O concurrent maintenance	Virtual I/O Server support for slot and device level concurrent maintenance via the diag hot plug support	Guided support in the Repair and Verify function on the HMC
Scripting and automation	Virtual I/O Server command-line interface (CLI) and HMC-compatible CLI	HMC command-line interface
Capacity on Demand	Entry of PowerVM codes only	Full support
User interface	Web browser (no local graphical display)	Web browser (local or remote)

	Integrated Virtualization Manager (IVM)	Hardware Management Console (HMC)
Workload Management (WLM) groups supported	One	254
LPAR configuration data backup and restore	Yes	Yes
Support for multiple profiles per partition	No	Yes
Serviceable event management	Service Focal Point Light: Consolidated management of firmware and management of partition detected errors	Service Focal Point support for consolidated management of operating system and firmware detected errors
Hypervisor and service processor dump support	Dump collection with support to do manual dump downloads	Dump collection and call home support
Remote support	No remote support connectivity	Full remote support for the HMC and connectivity for firmware remote support

## Β

### System requirements

Table B-1 shows the currently supported systems for the IBM Integrated Virtualization Manager (IVM).

IBM Power Systems	Supported server models
IBM POWER5 Systems	All server models, except p5-575, p5-590, and p5-595
IBM POWER6 Systems	All server models, except Power 575, Power 590, and Power 595
IBM POWER7 Systems	All server models, except Power 755, Power 770, Power 775, Power 780, and Power 795
IBM BladeCenter	All POWER6 and POWER7 processor-based blades, and IBM BladeCenter JS21

Table B-1 Supported server models for IVM

The minimum required firmware levels for supporting IVM include the following requirements:

- SF235 or later for POWER5 processor-based servers
- All firmware levels for POWER6 and POWER7 processor-based servers

The software minimum supported levels include the following requirements:

- ▶ IBM AIX 5L<sup>TM</sup> V5.3 or later
- ► SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 9 for POWER (SLES 9) or later
- ▶ Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 3 for POWER, Update 2 (RHEL AS 3) or later
- ► IBM i 6.1.1 and later

### **Related publications**

The publications listed in this section are considered particularly suitable for a more detailed discussion of the topics covered in this Redpaper.

### **IBM Redbooks related to PowerVM**

For information about ordering these publications, see "How to get IBM Redbooks" on page 214. Some of the documents referenced here might be available in softcopy only.

- ► PowerVM Best Practices, SG24-8062
- IBM PowerVM Virtualization Managing and Monitoring, SG24-7590.
- ► IBM PowerVM Virtualization Introduction and Configuration, SG24-7940.
- ► IBM PowerVM Getting Started Guide, REDP-4815.
- IBM PowerVM Virtualization Active Memory Sharing, REDP-4470.
- ► IBM PowerVM Live Partition Mobility, SG24-7460.

### **IBM Redbooks related to hardware**

These publications are also relevant as further information sources:

- IBM BladeCenter PS700, PS701, and PS702 Technical Overview and Introduction, REDP-4655
- ► IBM BladeCenter PS703 and PS704 Technical Overview and Introduction, REDP-4744
- ► IIBM Power 795 (9119-FHB) Technical Overview and Introduction, REDP-4640.
- IBM Power 770 and 780 (9117-MMD, 9179-MHD) Technical Overview and Introduction, REDP-4924
- IBM Power 770 and 780 (9117-MMC, 9179-MHC Technical Overview and Introduction, REDP-4798
- IBM Power 770 and 780 (9117-MMB, 9179-MHB) Technical Overview and Introduction, REDP-4639
- IBM Power 750 and 755 (8233-E8B, 8236-E8C) Technical Overview and Introduction, REDP-4638
- ► IBM Power 720 and 740 (8202-E4B, 8205-E6B) Technical Overview and Introduction, REDP-4637
- ► IBM Power 720 and 740 (8202-E4C, 8205-E6C) Technical Overview and Introduction, REDP-4797
- ► IBM Power 710 and 730 (8231-E2B) Technical Overview and Introduction, REDP-4636.
- IBM Power 710 and 730 (8231-E1C, 8231-E2C) Technical Overview and Introduction, REDP-4796
- ► IBM Power 570 and IBM Power 595 (POWER6) System Builder, REDP-4439
- IBM Power 520 and Power 550 (POWER6) System Builder, SG24-7765

### **Online resources**

These websites and URLs are also relevant as further information sources:

- IBM TotalStorage Mid-range/Enterprise disk Systems http://www.ibm.com/systems/storage/disk/index.html
- IBM Virtualization Engine http://www.ibm.com/systems/virtualization/
- IBM PowerVM

http://www.ibm.com/systems/power/

Virtual I/O Server supported environments

http://www.software.ibm.com/webapp/set2/sas/f/vios/home.html

- Hardware Management Console, Microcode, AIX Fix pack support information http://www.ibm.com/support/fixcentral/
- SUMA on AIX

http://www.software.ibm.com/support/customercare/sas/f/genunix/suma.html

SUSE Enterprise Linux

https://www.suse.com/products/server/

- Red Hat Enterprise Linux http://www.redhat.com/rhel/features/
- AIX 6.1 Information Center http://pic.dhe.ibm.com/infocenter/aix/v6r1/index.jsp
- AIX 7.1 Information Center

http://pic.dhe.ibm.com/infocenter/aix/v7r1/index.jsp?topic=%2Fcom.ibm.aix.ntl%2
FRELNOTES%2FGI11-9815-00.htm

Power Systems Hardware Information Center

http://pic.dhe.ibm.com/infocenter/powersys/v3r1m5/index.jsp

### How to get IBM Redbooks

You can search for, view, or download Redbooks, Redpapers, Hints and Tips, draft publications and Additional materials, as well as order hardcopy Redbooks or CD-ROMs, at this website:

ibm.com/redbooks

### **Help from IBM**

IBM Support and downloads

ibm.com/support

**IBM Global Services** 

ibm.com/services

### Integrated Virtualization Manager for IBM Power Systems Servers

### No dedicated Hardware Management Console required

#### Powerful integration for entry-level servers

Key administration tasks explained The *Virtual I/O Server (VIOS)* is part of the IBM PowerVM feature on IBM Power Systems and part of the IBM POWER Hypervisor. The VIOS is also supported on IBM BladeCenter. The server is a single-function appliance that is in the *logical partition (LPAR)* of the Power Systems server. The VIOS facilitates the sharing of physical I/O resources between client partitions (IBM AIX, IBM i, and Linux) within the server.

The Virtual I/O Server provides a virtual SCSI target, N\_Port ID Virtualization (NPIV) target, and Shared Ethernet Adapter (SEA) virtual I/O function to client LPARs.

The Virtual I/O Server has the capability of a hardware management function, the *Integrated Virtualization Manager (IVM*). IVM is a simplified hardware management solution that inherits most of the Hardware Management Console (HMC) features. The console manages a single server, avoiding the need of a dedicated personal computer.

IVM provides the following functions:

- Shared Storage Pool
- IBM Active Memory Sharing (AMS)
- Live Partition Mobility (LPM)
- Task manager monitor for long-running tasks
- Security additions such as viosecure and firewall, and other improvements

This IBM Redpaper publication provides an introduction to IVM by describing its architecture and showing how to install and configure a partitioned server using its capabilities. This document is intended for IT personnel who have a complete understanding of partitioning before reading this document.

REDP-4061-02

### INTERNATIONAL TECHNICAL SUPPORT ORGANIZATION

### BUILDING TECHNICAL INFORMATION BASED ON PRACTICAL EXPERIENCE

IBM Redbooks are developed by the IBM International Technical Support Organization. Experts from IBM, Customers and Partners from around the world create timely technical information based on realistic scenarios. Specific recommendations are provided to help you implement IT solutions more effectively in your environment.

For more information: ibm.com/redbooks



